

Vector HelpDesk - Administrator's Guide

Configuring and Maintaining Vector HelpDesk version 5.6

Copyright © Vector Networks Limited, MetaQuest Software Inc. and NetSupport Limited. All rights reserved.

The information in this document is subject to change without notice and should not be construed as a commitment by Vector

Networks Limited, Vector Networks Inc., MetaQuest Software Inc. or NetSupport Limited.

Vector Networks Limited, Vector Networks Inc. MetaQuest Software Inc. and NetSupport Limited assume no responsibility for

errors in this document.

The software described in this document is supplied under a license and may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms

of such license.

PC-Duo, and its logos, are trademarks of Vector Networks Limited. MetaQuest is a trademark of MetaQuest Software Inc. All other

trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

PART NUMBER: DH500/00

Table of Contents

Chapter 1 - Administering Vector HelpDesk.....	1
Vector HelpDesk Help Center	2
Creating Projects and Generating Web Views.....	3
Managing Users, Contacts, and Groups.....	5
Product Support Services	6
HelpDesk Admin	7
Web View Editor	8
HelpDesk Web Admin.....	9
Troubleshooting HelpDesk Web Admin	10
Chapter 2 - Planning and Deploying your Installation	11
Planning	12
Implementation Roadmap.....	13
Creating a Project.....	15
Customizing Fields	16
Creating Groups and Granting Permissions.....	18
User Accounts.....	20
Generating Web Views	21
Setting Up Notifications	24
Chapter 3 - Projects.....	25
What is a Project?	26
Creating Projects.....	27
Copying Definitions and Styles	28
Building a Project Template	29
Deleting Projects.....	30

Editing Project Properties	31
Chapter 4 - Editing Fields	32
About the Field Editor	33
About Adding Fields.....	35
Adding Fields to Reports	36
Making Fields Required.....	37
Making Fields Read-Only.....	38
Using Fields to Define Styles	39
Tracking Changes	40
Choosing a Destination Tab.....	41
Setting Field Labels	42
Choosing a Field Type	43
Setting the Field Size	44
About Removing Fields	45
Deleting Fields	46
Hiding Fields in all Web Views.....	47
Removing Fields from Web Views.....	48
About Choice Lists	49
Editing Choice Tables.....	50
Editing Choice Text	51
Renaming Choice List Tables.....	52
Sorting Choice Lists.....	53
Editing the Progress and State Lists.....	54
Global Choice Lists.....	55
Working with Tabs	56
Chapter 5 - Finding and Listing Issues	57
About Queries	58

Searching by Dates	59
Finding Issues for the Current User	61
Finding New Issues.....	62
Finding Parent Issues	63
Searching Choices Lists with Relational Operators.....	64
Previewing Queries.....	65
Saving Queries	66
Inserting Parentheses Around Search Conditions.....	67
Searching for Wildcards	70
About Sorts	71
Sort Orders	72
Previewing Sorts	73
Saving Sorts	74
About Layouts.....	75
Previewing Layouts	76
Saving Layouts.....	77
Chapter 6 - Reporting.....	78
About Reports	79
Viewing Reports	80
Selecting Issues to Include in a Report.....	82
Summary Reports.....	83
Listing Reports.....	88
Time Reports.....	90
Defining Report Pages	93
Chapter 7 - Managing Contacts, Users and Groups.....	94
About Users and Contacts.....	95
About Security	96

About Groups	97
Importing User Accounts	98
Defining Import Rules	99
Adding Active Directory Servers and Windows Domains	100
Adding a Windows NT Domain	101
Filtering Users	102
Import Settings	103
Creating User Accounts	104
Setting Default Values for New Users	105
About Work Teams	106
Defining Work Teams	107
Assigning Users to Work Teams	108
Adding Work Team Support to Web Views	109
Building Work Team Queries	110
Defining User Categories	111
Assigning Users to Categories	112
Hiding Users in Projects	113
Disabling User Accounts	114
Editing User Information	115
Changing Passwords	116
Changing the Authentication Method	117
Defining User Groups	118
Groups: Adding and Removing Users	119
Users: Changing Group Membership	120
Reserving Licenses	121
Companies	122
Departments	123

About Features	124
Admin Features	129
Web View Editor Features	131
Enabling and Disabling Projects	132
Chapter 8 - E-mail Integration	133
Setting Up E-mail Integration	134
Mapping Message Fields to Issue Fields	140
Setting Default Values for Issues Submitted by E-mail	142
E-mail Conversation and Queue	148
Web View E-mail Options	153
Chapter 9 - Defining Workflow Rules	155
About Workflow Rules	156
What Can You Do with Workflow Rules?	157
What You Should Know about Workflow Rules	161
What is a Workflow Rule?	162
Creating Rule Templates	163
Defining Conditions	165
Defining Rules	166
Deleting Rules	167
Renaming Rules	168
Using Macros in Rules	169
Setting Possible Values	170
Changing When Rules Are Evaluated	171
Changing the Order of Evaluation	172
Applying Workflow Rules	173
Disabling Workflow Rules	174
Chapter 10 - Defining Service Level Agreements	175

About Service Level Agreements	176
Setting Up Service Agreements	177
Target Times	178
Escalation Levels	179
About Escalation Rules.....	180
Order of Evaluation.....	181
Conditions.....	182
Actions	183
Sending E-mail Messages.....	184
Running Programs	186
Specifying Operational Hours.....	187
Defining Service Levels.....	188
Creating Service Agreements	189
Applying Service Agreements to Issues	190
Disabling Service Agreements.....	191
Service Level Reporting	192
Service Types.....	193
Chapter 11 - E-mail Notification	194
About Notifications.....	195
What Can You Do With Notifications?.....	196
Editing Notifications.....	198
Specifying Notification Recipients.....	199
Defining When Conditions	200
Specifying Notification Contents.....	202
Managing Workflow with Notifications.....	203
Setting Up Notifications	204
Handling Notification Failures	206

Chapter 12 - Generating Web Views	207
What is a Web View?	208
About the Web View Editor	209
Creating Web Views.....	210
Generating Web Views.....	211
Copying Web Views.....	212
Deleting Web Views.....	213
Renaming Web Views	214
Setting Web View Attributes	217
Setting Group Access Permissions	218
Knowledge Base Views	219
Self-Service Views.....	221
Exporting Fields.....	223
Exporting Queries	224
Adding the Child Issues Tab.....	225
Editing Field Attributes.....	226
Using Field Variables	227
Adding Pop-up Editors	228
Aligning Fields.....	229
Automatically Updating Choice Lists.....	230
Changing Field Captions.....	231
Spanning Columns	232
Applying CSS Styles.....	233
Displaying Read-Only Fields.....	234
Width.....	235
Inserting Custom HTML Code	236
Adding URL Buttons	237

Text Boxes	238
Multi-Choice Lists	239
Configuring Choice Lists	240
Linking User Details	241
Hiding Fields.....	242
Pointing Users to Web Views.....	243
Changing URLs and Directories.....	244
Changing the Windows Account	246
Setting Default Values	247
Templates and the CustomizedFiles Folder	248
Customizing Web View Files	249
Customizing Shared Web View Files	250
Overriding Customizations	251
Customizing the Web View Interface.....	252
Changing the Date and Time Formats for Web Views.....	253
Administering Vector HelpDesk on the Web	254
Chapter 13 - Maintaining Your HelpDesk Systems	255
Relocating Databases to SQL Server	256
Troubleshooting Relocations	258
Relocating Attachments	259
Deleting Issues	260
About the Logons Editor.....	261
Logging Off Users	262
Setting the Monitor Interval.....	263
About the Repair and Compact Tool	264
About the Database Files	265
Compacting Database Files.....	266

Repairing Damaged Database Files	267
Running Security Repair.....	268
About the Integrity Editor.....	269
Remove Locks	270
Validate Integrity of Fields	271
Validate Relationships	272
Validate Integrity of Issues	273
Enabling Auto Repair	274
Entering Your License Information	275
Entering License Keys	276
Releasing Databases.....	277
About Backing Up	278
Backing Up Issues.....	280
Backing Up Projects	281
Backing Up the Users Database.....	282
Backing Up System Files.....	283
Backing Up Web Views.....	284
Automatic Backups.....	285
Performing Hot Backups.....	286
Restoring Backups	287
Uploading Large Attachments	288
Fixing 404 Errors	289
Chapter 14 - Importing Issues.....	290
About Importing Issues.....	291
What Can You Import?.....	292
How Records are Created	293
Before You Import.....	294

Importing Issues into a Source Table.....	296
Combining Multiple Source Tables	297
Importing Issues from Projects	298
Creating Queries to Merge Source Tables	299
Mapping Import Fields	300
Chapter 15 - Integrating Inventory	301
About Inventory	302
How to Integrate Inventory.....	304
Linking Projects and Site Databases.....	305
Editing Links.....	306
Removing Links.....	307
Defining the Query	308
Adding the Inventory Tab to Web Views	309
Hiding the Software and Hardware Report Buttons	310
Manually Linking to Sites.....	311
Gathering Information about the Site Database.....	312
Chapter 16 - Integrating Remote Control	313
About Remote Control.....	314
Setting Up Remote Control.....	315
Adding Remote Control Buttons	316
Configuring ActiveX for Remote Control	317
Checking Client Security Key Settings.....	318
Removing Remote Control Buttons.....	319
Chapter 17 - Customizing HelpDesk	320
Power Customizations	321
About the Databases	322
Editing Databases.....	323

Creating an Attachments Field.....	324
Customizing URL Buttons.....	325
Customizing the Inventory Tab	326
About HTML Reports.....	329
Changing the CSS Styles	330
PlaceHolders	331
Customizing the Report Used to Print Issues	332
Deleting Users.....	333
Removing Disabled Users from Choice Lists.....	334
Adding a Choice List of Users or Contacts	335
Enabling Timestamping in New Projects	336
Adding Timestamping	337
Customizing Timestamping.....	338
Timestamping with One Memo Field.....	339
Changing the Format of Attachments	340
Attaching Information.....	341
Adding Custom Mail Contents	342
Example Macros	343
Adding Notification Reports.....	345
Submit-only Views Without Persistent Cookies	347
About Branding Web Views.....	348
Replacing Logos	349
View Toolbar	350
Summary List Toolbar	351
Summary List Header	352
Summary List.....	353
Tabs.....	354

Form	355
Field Captions	356
Form Elements	357
Command Bar	358
About Branding Dialogs	359
Common Styles for All Dialogs.....	360
Attachments Dialog	361
Reports Dialog	362
Revision History Dialog	363
Options Dialog	364
Contacts Dialog.....	365
Password Dialog	366
About Branding the Logon Page.....	367
Validate Logon Page.....	368
Adding Rows	369
Changing the Timesheet Starting Day	371
Creating a Timesheet	372
Chapter 18 - Databases	373
Overview	374
Issue Database.....	375
Project Definitions Database.....	376
Users Database.....	378
Other Project Files	379
Other Databases	380
Chapter 19 - Relocating HelpDesk Installation	381
About the Relocation Wizard.....	382
Before You Relocate.....	383

Relocating Vector HelpDesk	384
If Something Goes Wrong	385
Updating Client Programs.....	386
Enabling Vector HelpDesk after Relocation.....	387

Chapter 1 - Administering Vector HelpDesk

Vector HelpDesk Help Center

Common Tasks

- [Creating New Projects](#)
- [Editing Fields](#)
- [Creating Web Views](#)
- [Generating Web Views](#)
- [Automating Workflow](#)
- [Setting Up Service Agreements](#)

Getting Started

- [Planning an Issue Tracking System](#)
- [Implementation Roadmap](#)
- [Creating Projects and Generating Web Views](#)
- [Managing Users, Contacts, and Groups](#)

Creating Projects and Generating Web Views

A Vector HelpDesk project includes:

- A database of issues (and their revision histories).
- A database of definitions, which includes the queries, sorts, layouts, reports, notifications, fields, and tabs available in the project.

Each project can have multiple Web-based views.

Each Web view is customized to meet the needs of a class of users. For example, employees only need to see the issues they submitted; not all the issues in the project database. On the other hand, support staff need access to all the issue information in the project database.

With Vector HelpDesk, you can provide separate views for employees and for help desk staff. Each view is accessed through the same Web-based interface.

Each Web view is customized to meet the needs of a class of users. For example, customers on a beta list don't need to see all the issues in a project, just the ones submitted by the beta list. And customers don't need to see any fix-related information added to the issues by the development staff. Internal development staff, on the other hand, needs access to all the issue information in the project.

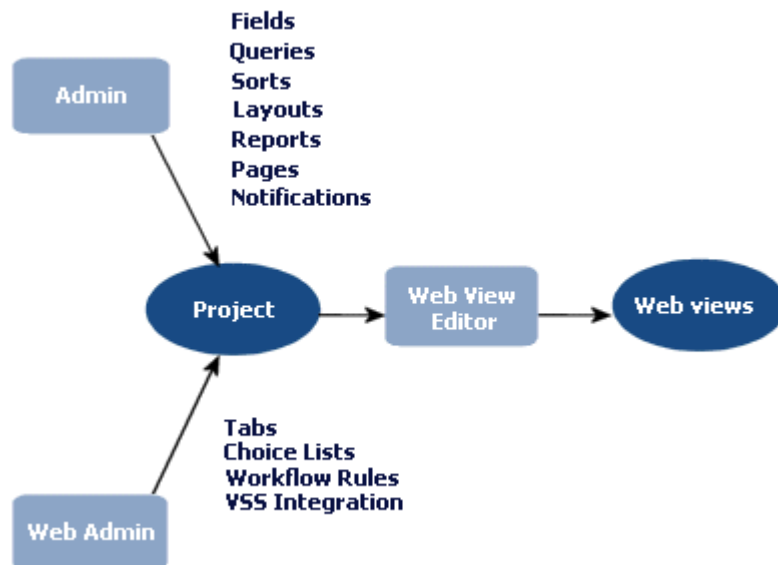
With Vector HelpDesk, you can provide separate views for external customers and for internal staff. Each view is accessed through the same web-based interface.

Views are easy to define using the Web view Editor. Just choose the queries and fields that you want users to see:

- Queries determine which issues users can retrieve from the project database.
- Fields determine what information users can view and modify for each issue.

To create projects and edit definitions (of fields, queries, reports, sorts, layouts, and notifications), use HelpDesk Admin, a Windows program. HelpDesk Web Admin is a Web-based tool that allows you to remotely edit some of the project definitions (such as tabs and choice lists).

Administering Projects and Web Views



Related Topics

[Creating New Projects](#)

[Editing Fields](#)

[Defining Reports](#)

[Defining Queries](#)

[Defining Sorts](#)

[Defining Layouts](#)

[About Workflow Rules](#)

[Working with Tabs](#)

[Editing Choice Tables](#)

[Setting Up Notifications](#)

[Creating Web Views](#)

[HelpDesk Admin](#)

[Web View Editor](#)

[HelpDesk Web Admin](#)

Managing Users, Contacts, and Groups

Users

All users must have a Vector HelpDesk user account, which consists of a user name and an optional password. Use HelpDesk Web Admin to create and manage user accounts.

Groups

By assigning users to groups, you can control:

- Access to features in HelpDesk Admin, HelpDesk Web Admin, and Web views.
- Access to projects.
- Access to Web views.
- Workflow permissions.

Use HelpDesk Web Admin to create groups, edit group privileges, and assign users to groups.

Contacts

A contact is a person who reports an issue. For example, a guest from another company may report an issue with a computer while they are working on-site. In this case, the guest is the contact, and the help desk analyst who enters the report is the submitter.

Contacts

A contact is a person who is not a Vector HelpDesk user, but who reports an issue. For example, a guest from another company may report an issue with a computer while they are working on-site. In this case, the guest is the contact, and the help desk analyst who enters the report is the submitter.

To create and manage a list of contacts, use HelpDesk Web Admin. Web views can also include a Contact button that opens the Users and Contacts dialog. Access to this dialog from a Web view is controlled by the group permissions defined in HelpDesk Web Admin.

Vector HelpDesk provides a set of tools for administering projects and Web views:

- HelpDesk Admin for administering projects.
- Web View Editor for defining and generating Web views for projects.
- HelpDesk Web Admin for administering projects and users through the Web.

Related Topics

[Defining User Groups](#)

[Creating User Accounts](#)

[Adding and Removing Users](#)

[Defining Conditions based on User Groups](#)

[Setting Group Access Permissions for Web views](#)

[HelpDesk Admin](#)

[Web View Editor](#)

[HelpDesk Web Admin](#)

Product Support Services

You can use the following link to get support information.

[Technical Support](#)

HelpDesk Admin

HelpDesk Admin is an application for administering Vector HelpDesk projects. For example, you can use it to:

- Create projects
- Customize fields
- Define queries, sorts, and layouts
- Define reports
- Define and set up e-mail notifications

To start HelpDesk Admin:

On the **Start** menu, select **Programs, Vector, HelpDesk, HelpDesk Admin**.

On the **Start** menu, point to **Programs**, click **Vector HelpDesk**, and then click **HelpDesk Admin**.

Related Topics

[Creating New Projects](#)

[Editing Fields](#)

[Defining Reports](#)

[Defining Queries](#)

[Defining Sorts](#)

[Defining Layouts](#)

Web View Editor

Web View Editor is a Microsoft Windows application that creates Web views for your Vector HelpDesk projects. Web views are Web-based applications that provide access to projects through a Web browser.

To start the Web View Editor from HelpDesk Admin:

On the **Tools** menu, click **Web** and then click **Web View Editor**.

The **Tools > Web > Web View Editor** command is available only when the Web View editor is installed on the computer running HelpDesk Admin.

To start the Web View Editor from the Start menu:

On the **Start** menu, select **Programs, Vector, HelpDesk, Web View Editor**.

On the **Start** menu, point to **Programs**, click **Vector HelpDesk**, and then click **Web View Editor**.

Notes

- HelpDesk Admin and Web View Editor are installed on the Web server, by default. You can install additional copies of these tools on other computers, so you can perform administration tasks locally. However, to create new Web views, you must use the editor on the Web server.

Related Topics

[Creating Web Views](#)

HelpDesk Web Admin

HelpDesk Web Admin is a Web-based administration tool. It allows you to perform the following administrative tasks over the Web:

- Manager users and user groups, and define group privileges (access to features and projects)
- Add and edit contacts
- Define workflow rules
- Create new tabs
- Set up choice fields
- Enable e-mail notifications
- Migrate projects to SQL Server and move projects to different SQL Server computers
- Move attachments to a different computer

To logon to HelpDesk Web Admin, choose one of the following methods:

- In your Web browser, go to `//server/helpdeskadmin`, where **server** is the name of your Web server.
- In HelpDesk Admin, click **Tools > Web > Web Admin**.
- At the Web server, click **Start > Programs > Vector > HelpDesk > Web AdminStart > Programs > Vector > HelpDesk > HelpDesk Web Admin**.

Related Topics

[Administering Vector HelpDesk on the Web](#)

[Troubleshooting HelpDesk Web Admin](#)

[About Workflow Rules](#)

[Working with Tabs](#)

[Editing Choice Tables](#)

[Setting Up Notifications](#)

[Relocating Databases to SQL Server](#)

[Relocating Attachments](#)

Troubleshooting HelpDesk Web Admin

If users cannot successfully relocate databases or perform other tasks with HelpDesk Web Admin, check that there is a global group named YOURDOMAIN\CensusAdminsGroup, and that the user (especially if the user is a domain user, not a domain administrator) is a member of this group.

HelpDesk Web Admin uses your Windows credentials to run tasks if you are a member of the CensusAdminsGroup group or the local Administrators group on the HelpDesk Server computer. Otherwise, HelpDesk Web Admin runs tasks as CensusUser.

Members of the CensusAdminsGroup group (or of the local Administrators group on the HelpDesk Server computer) have the required permissions to perform any task with HelpDesk Web Admin. The CensusUser account, on the other hand, cannot perform IIS-related tasks such as unloading virtual directories (when logging off users), and may not be able to relocate databases to other computers.

During installation, the Setup program creates the CensusAdminsGroup group and adds all members of the domain Administrators group to the CensusAdminsGroup group. Setup also adds the CensusAdminsGroup to the local Administrators group on the HelpDesk Server computer. The purpose of the CensusAdminsGroup is to control access to Web Admin.

If Setup was unable to create the CensusAdminsGroup, you can create it manually.

For example, if you want to allow a domain user that is not a domain administrator (because domain administrators already belong to the local Admins group by default) to use the Relocation tab, you can create the CensusAdminsGroup and add the domain user to the group. This allows the domain user to perform tasks that are typically only available to local admins:

- Managing SQL Server databases and physical files.
- Logging off Vector HelpDesk users (which requires permissions to control IIS).

To manually create the CensusAdminsGroup after Vector HelpDesk is installed:

- 1** Create a global group named **CensusAdminsGroup** in the domain.
- 2** Add CensusAdminsGroup as a member of the local Administrators group of the Web server.
- 3** On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs > Vector > HelpDesk > HelpDesk Tools > Set Up Global Group.All Programs > Vector > HelpDesk > HelpDesk Tools > Set Up Global Group.**

Chapter 2 - Planning and Deploying your Installation

Planning

Before you can set up your Vector HelpDesk system, you need to understand your business structure and have a clear idea of the process you want to implement. The following sections illustrate the sort of information required to set up a typical Vector HelpDesk installation.

Information Recording and Tracking

- What information do you want to record and track for each issue?
- How do you categorize issues?
- Do you want to provide different views of the issue data?

For example, do you want a summary view optimized for logging issues and categorizing problems, and a detailed view for recording things such as how the issue was resolved, and how long it took?

- Do you want to be able to link issues? Vector HelpDesk supports parent-child [relationships](#) between issues.

Workflow

- What is your help desk process?

Can you represent the path of an issue through the process as a sequence of steps, or decisions, such as New, Assigned, Verified, Resolved?

- Do you want to enforce this workflow process?
- Who needs permission to make decisions? Who is responsible for carrying out each step in the process?
- Do you need e-mail notifications to enforce ownership and accountability? When issues are submitted or resolved, who needs to be alerted?

Roles and Responsibilities

- What are the different roles and responsibilities of the people that use Vector HelpDesk? Can you identify different groups of users?
- Do different groups have different requirements of the issue tracking system? Do you need to restrict access to the system based on group membership?

For example, you probably want to restrict most users to the ability to submit and track issues. Support staff, on the other hand, require greater access to the system.
- Do you need to manage and coordinate work teams? Vector HelpDesk allows you to define work teams and the assign issues to them rather than a specific individual.

Related Topics

[Implementation Roadmap](#)

[Creating a New Project](#)

[Customizing Fields](#)

[Creating Groups and Granting Permissions](#)

[Managing Work Teams](#)

[Creating User Accounts](#)

[Generating Web Views](#)

[Setting Up Notifications](#)

Implementation Roadmap

This roadmap outlines the major steps in implementing an issue tracking system. Performing the steps in the sequence recommended here save time and simplify the process.

Step 1. Create a project

A project defines the fields, queries, sorts, layouts, and reports that you see in a Web view.

- 1 Create a new project.
- 2 Customize the fields in the project.
- 3 Edit and define the queries, reports, sorts, and layouts to match the set of fields defined in the project.

Step 2. Define user groups and create user accounts

- 1 Define user groups and set group permissions to control access to data and administrative features.
- 2 Create user accounts so people can log on. You can either import user accounts from Active Directory (or from a Windows domain), or create user accounts in Vector HelpDesk.
- 3 Assign users to groups.
- 4 Define work teams and assign users to work teams.

Step 3. Define and generate Web views

After you generate and test your Web views, you can perform more advanced customizations, such as defining workflow and notifications.

Step 4. Define field dependencies (optional)

Use the workflow editor in HelpDesk Web Admin to make the possible values in one choice list depend on the choice selected from another list.

You can apply changes made in the workflow editor without regenerating the Web view.

Step 5. Define a workflow (optional)

Use the workflow editor in HelpDesk Web Admin to define workflow rules to emulate your process. For example, you can enforce a sequence of steps by controlling the possible values of the **Progress** field.

You can also define rules that set the value of a field when another field changes. For example, you can define rules that assign an owner based on the problem area:

When (Problem Area = Outlook), then set this value: (Owner = Resident Outlook Wiz).

Step 6. Define Service Level Agreements

A [service agreement](#) is an agreement between the help desk and users. The service agreement defines a required level of service for the users.

A service agreements can be with individual users (contacts), with all users in a department, or all users in a company.

A service level is a guarantee of a certain level of service. For example, a basic service level may provide 9-to-5 service during the regular working week, while a more comprehensive service level might provide 24 hour service, 7 days a week.

Each service level has its own hours of service, target response and closure times for issues, and escalation rules.

Step 7. Import existing data (optional)

After you finalize the set of fields in a project, you can import information from existing databases.

Step 8. Define and set up notifications

You can define and set up notifications after you generate your Web views, but you should do this before people start using the Web views to submit issues.

Step 9. Go live

Make your Web views available for general use.

Step 10. System maintenance (ongoing)

You should regularly backup your projects, databases, Web views, and other system files.

You should also run the Repair and Compact utility (in the **Tools** menu of HelpDesk Admin) on a regular basis. Compacting Microsoft Access databases and files often is the best preventive maintenance.

Related Topics

[Creating New Projects](#)

[Editing Fields](#)

[Defining Reports](#)

[Defining Queries](#)

[Defining Sorts](#)

[Defining Layouts](#)

[Importing User Accounts](#)

[Defining User Groups](#)

[Creating User Accounts](#)

[Users: Changing Group Membership](#)

[Groups: Adding and Removing Users](#)

[Assigning Users to Work Teams](#)

[Creating Web Views](#)

[About Workflow Rules](#)

[Defining a Workflow](#)

[Importing Issues](#)

[Defining Notifications](#)

[Pointing Users to Web Views](#)

[Backing Up](#)

[About the Repair and Compact Tool](#)

Creating a Project

A project defines everything you see in a Web view: the fields, queries, reports, sorts, and layouts.

How Many Projects Do You Need?

Each project has its own issue database.

For example, you can record different types of issue in separate databases by creating separate projects. Separate projects mean smaller databases and better performance. They also mean you can customize the fields, queries, sorts, layouts, and reports, so you can simplify your Web Views.

However, tracking issues in separate projects has some disadvantages:

- You cannot generate reports across all projects.
- You cannot create a single view that covers all projects.
- You cannot link items from different projects
- People who work with all three types of issue can find that separate projects are inefficient and time-consuming.

Choosing a Base Project

A base project serves as a starting point for a new project. The new project inherits the fields defined in the base project, and can optionally inherit the styles (queries, reports, sorts, layouts, and notifications) and Web views as well.

Vector HelpDesk includes a default HelpDesk project you can use as the base project. Before you create a new project based on HelpDesk, you should familiarize yourself with the fields included in HelpDesk, and understand what you can and cannot do when customizing fields.

Designed for use in development projects, HelpDesk allows you to record and track project-related tasks, feature and enhancement requests, user suggestions, and change notices.

HelpDesk includes over 60 fields, along with a complete set of reports, queries, sorts, layouts, and notifications based on those fields. Some of the default fields cannot be deleted, so even if you don't use these fields, they take up extra space in your database.

Before you delete a field, you must remove it from any report, query, sort, layout, or notification that references it. Deleting unused fields helps minimize the size of your database.

Customizing Fields

You can edit and delete most fields in Vector HelpDesk. For example, if a field is the right data type and size, but has the wrong caption, you can change the caption. Similarly, you can replace some or all of the entries in choice lists.

Before customizing a project, you should familiarize with the fields, and determine:

- Which of the existing fields you can use as is, or by changing the label, choice table, or tab
- Which fields you need to add
- Which the existing fields you want to delete

You should also familiarize yourself with what you can and cannot do when editing fields.

You Can:

- Add new fields.
- Change field labels.
- Change the list of choices for a choice list and update the queries that test the choice values.

If you change the **Progress** choice list, you should either disable or update the default workflow rules because the default workflow is based on this list.

- Delete most fields.

To delete a field, you must first remove it from any queries, sorts, layouts, reports, and notification that use the field.

Before you delete a field, go through the different queries, sorts, layouts, reports, and notification conditions and either remove the field or delete the style.

- Create linked choice lists so that the contents of one list depends on a selection in another list.
- Move fields between tabs.
- Change tab names, and reorder the tabs.
- Disable fields (make read-only) either for all users or for specific user groups.
- Hide fields. Note that when you hide a field, it is hidden in all Web views.

You Cannot:

- Change field types.

For example, you cannot change a single choice field into a multi-choice field, or a Number field into a Text field.

- Change the field size.

For example, you cannot change the size of a text box from 20 to 30.

- Delete certain fields. Some fields, such as **Owner**, **State**, and **Progress**, cannot be deleted.

When you generate a Web view, you can choose not to include specific fields. So even if you cannot delete them, you can remove them from all views. Of course, the fields still take up space in your database.

- Use multi-choice lists in workflow rules.
- Use multi-choice lists in formulas, charts, or cross-tabs when building custom reports with Crystal Reports.

Notes

- If you need to change the type or the size of a field, the best thing to do is to copy the field and delete the original. When you copy a field, you can edit its type and size. Note that copying a field does not copy the stored data, and deleting a field destroys any stored data.

What Happens to Styles

Styles such as queries and reports are based on fields. For the most part, HelpDesk Admin automatically updates styles when you customize the fields, but there are some exceptions.

When you add a new field, you need to add it to the following reports:

- **Current Issue - Detailed**
Used to print the current issue in a Web view.
- **Notification - Detailed Record, Notification - Summary**
Used to format the contents or attachments to e-mail notification messages.

Notes

- In a Web view, these reports show only the fields exported to the view.

When you rename a field

When you change the label appearing on choice lists, HelpDesk Admin automatically updates any reports and layouts that use the field name as a title.

If you change just the Field Caption label, HelpDesk Admin does not update any reports and layouts that use the field name as a title.

If you rename a field such as the **Progress** field, you may want to rename any sorts, queries, and layouts whose names are based on the name of the field.

When you edit a choice list

If you delete a choice from a choice table (for example, **Assigned** from **tblSubstate**, the **Progress** choice table), then you have to update any queries that test the choice value. The same is true if you change the choice text (for example, from **Assigned** to **Started**).

You may also have to update custom reports that use the choice list. For example, when you change the choice text, custom reports that use a specified sort order add the new choice to the Others category.

You should also check the workflow rules if you edit the **Progress** choice list.

When you delete a field

Custom reports that use the deleted field do not display properly. For example, if a custom report uses the field for calculations, or as a chart axis, then deleting the field invalidates the report. In many cases the report still works, but the data does not make sense.

Related Topics

[Editing Fields with the Field Editor](#)

[Editing Field Attributes in the Web View Editor](#)

[Planning](#)

Creating Groups and Granting Permissions

Groups enable you to restrict access to Web views or administrative features. Typically, groups match the different roles in a process. For example, if you have separate groups for employees and help desk staff, you can prevent employees from opening the same Web views used by the help desk staff.

Vector HelpDesk includes several built-in groups that cannot be deleted: **Users**, **Admins**, and **Guests**. It also includes several sample groups that reflect basic help desk roles: **Employees**, **HelpDesk-Analysts**, and **HelpDesk-GroupLeads**.

If a help desk analyst is responsible for administering the your system, you can make the analyst a member of both **HelpDesk-Analysts** and **Admins**. As a member of **Admins**, the analyst has full access to all administrative features.

If you want to restrict access to Web views or administrative features, use groups. Typically, you create groups that match the different roles in your business process. For example, if you have separate groups for sales and development staff, you can prevent the sales staff from opening the same Web views used by the development staff.

Vector HelpDesk includes several built-in groups that cannot be deleted: **Users**, **Admins**, and **Guests**. It also includes several sample groups that reflect the basic roles in a product development process: **Developers**, **QA**, **Managers**, and **Customers**.

If a developer is responsible for administering your system, you can make the developer a member of both **Developers** and **Admins**. As a member of **Admins**, the developer has full access to all administrative features.

You can have several different admin-type groups, with each group providing a different level of access to administrative capabilities. For example, a basic admin group could allow members to create new user accounts and update contact information, while other admin groups could:

- Create fields, edit choice lists, rename tabs, change workflow.
- Create reports, queries, sorts, and layouts, define notifications.
- Create projects, delete records, perform database maintenance, set up notifications.

About the Built-in Groups

Users

All users are automatically members of the **Users** group. You cannot remove users from this group, or delete it. Permissions granted to this group apply to all users, and cannot be overridden.

Admins

Members of the **Admin** group have complete access to all projects and administrative features. You cannot disable features or projects for the **Admins** group.

Guests

The **Guests** group is intended for users who are not full-time employees, such as customers or visitors from other companies.

Features

Features allow you to control:

- Who can use the Ad-hoc Query Editor, generate reports, update contact information, view revision histories, or change their password in a Web view.
- Who can log on to HelpDesk Admin, HelpDesk Web Admin, and the Web View Editor.
- Who can use certain tools in HelpDesk Admin and HelpDesk Web Admin. For example, who can edit workflow rules in HelpDesk Web Admin, and who can create reports or edit fields in HelpDesk Admin.

Projects

When you create a project, you specify which groups can open the project. Groups allowed to open a project can:

- Log on to Web views of the project (if they also have permission to open the view).
- Edit the project in HelpDesk Admin.
- Edit views of that project in Web View Editor, or generate new views of that project.

Admins can always open a project. Instead of allowing **Users** to open a project, you should allow specific groups. That way you can grant access permissions to views on a group-by-group basis in the Web View Editor.

Views

Groups allowed to open a view can log on to the view. A group must be allowed to open the project before it can be allowed to open a view.

Remember that if members of the Users group are allowed to open the view, then any user can open the view.

Related Topics

[Defining User Groups](#)

[Enabling and Disabling Features](#)

[Enabling and Disabling Projects](#)

[Setting Group Access Permissions for Web Views](#)

User Accounts

User accounts provide basic logon security. Vector HelpDesk supports the following types of account:

- Vector HelpDesk user accounts.
- Active Directory user accounts.
- Windows NT user accounts.

The authentication method used for each user is specified in HelpDesk Web Admin.

A user account must be required to access HelpDesk Admin, HelpDesk Web Admin, and the Web View Editor. Users must also log on to access Web Views unless they use a submit-only view.

Submit-only Views

A submit-only view allows an unlimited number of users to enter issues from a single user account. All users automatically log on to the view with this account (in fact, the users never see the logon window, they go straight to the view).

This user account must belong to a group that has permission to open the Web view, and to add and update contacts. The account is used to set the **Submitter** field.

Users submitting issues by this method are recorded as the contact. They must enter the required contact information (name, e-mail, and so on) the first time they submit an issue.

Importing User Accounts from Windows

You can import accounts from an Active Directory domain or from a Windows NT domain. Vector HelpDesk includes a User Account Manager wizard to help you import user accounts.

You can also schedule imports to keep Vector HelpDesk synchronized with Active Directory (or Windows domains).

Predefined User Accounts

Vector HelpDesk includes several built-in users: **demo**, **guest**, and **admin**. It also includes sample users that reflect basic help desk roles. You can disable most of these accounts in HelpDesk Web Admin. The **admin** account cannot be disabled, so you should change the admin password.

Disabled user accounts are still listed in the **Contact**, **Owner**, and **Submitter** lists. You must edit the project database files to delete the users from the database, or to remove them from the choice lists.

Related Topics

[Importing User Accounts](#)

[Creating User Accounts](#)

[Users: Changing Group Membership](#)

[Groups: Adding and Removing Users](#)

[Hiding Users in Projects](#)

Generating Web Views

Parent-child relationships between issues?

You can add a **Child Issues** tab to a Web view to allow users to link one or more [child issues](#) to a parent issue. For example:

- If you have several bugs that are all symptoms of the same problem, you can make those bugs the children of the main, parent bug for the problem.
- If a task consists of a number of sub-tasks, the sub-task issues can be children of the main task.
- If a bug is present in multiple branches of your code, you can create a child issue for each code branch.

By default, the parent issue controls the substate of the child issues. For example, when a user changes the substate of the parent to **Fixed**, the children are also marked **Fixed**. If you want the substate of a child issue to be independent from the substate of the parent issue, you must export the [Substate controlled by parent](#) field.

Customized files from the base project?

New projects automatically inherit the customized Web view files of the base project including any custom reports.

When you create a new project, everything in:

```
CUSTOMIZEDFILES\#Project#<base-project>\
```

is copied to:

```
CUSTOMIZEDFILES\#Project#<your-project>\
```

What if you don't export a field?

Queries

If you don't export a field, don't export queries that reference the field. The query won't work.

For example, suppose you don't export the **Owner** field, but you do export a query like **My Open Issues**, which tests the value of the **Owner** field. When a user tries to run the query, the user gets a message saying that the query could not be completed and the view is rolling back to the previous query.

If the query is the default query for the view, users get a more informative message when they log on.

Layouts

Layouts do not include fields that are not exported.

Sorts

Sorts default to sorting by issue number if a field is missing.

Listing Reports

Listing reports (such as the **Current Issue - Detailed** report, which is used by the **Print** button) include only the fields exported to the view.

Custom Reports

Like listing reports, custom reports include only the fields exported to the view. However, unlike listing reports, custom reports do not always handle missing fields properly.

For example, if the **Owner** field is not exported, then, instead of showing owner names along one axis of a chart, the report may show the summary descriptions or the priority values. What the report shows depends on the order of the fields in the report definition (if a field is missing, the next one in the definition is used).

Should you automatically update choice lists?

If you expect to frequently update a choice list, set the **Automatically Update List** attribute to **Yes**. This means you won't have to regenerate the Web view every time you update the list because the view checks for updates each time a user logs on.

By default, only the **Contact**, **Owner**, and **Submitter** choice lists are automatically updated.

Automatically updating a large number of choice lists may affect performance. You should automatically update only the choice lists that you plan to frequently change.

Changing field labels

To change field labels, set the **Caption** attribute in the Web View Editor. This allows you to override the label specified in the project.

The **Caption** attribute only changes the label in the HTML form. Everywhere else in the Web view (such as in reports and the Ad-hoc Query Editor), the label defined in the project is used.

When do you have to regenerate?

When you:

- Add a new field or query to a project. Remember to move the new field or query to the **Export to View** list before you generate.
- Change a choice list (for example, add a new choice, or change the text of a choice), unless **Automatically Update List** is set to **Yes**.
- When you change any of the attributes for a field (such as when you set **Automatically Update List** to **Yes**).

You don't have to regenerate when you:

- Change the definition of a query, sort, or layout.
- Define new sorts and layouts. All sorts and layouts are automatically exported to views of the project.
- Create or edit reports.
- Add a group to, or remove from, the list of groups allowed to open the view. You just have to save the view.
- Enable or disable features.

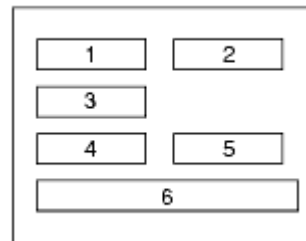
Notes

Web view users must exit and log back on to see the changes.

How to control the layout of fields

The order of the fields in the **Export to View** list determines the order in which they are laid out in the two columns of the HTML form. For example, here's how the first six fields in the **Export to View** list would be arranged, if:

- None of the first five fields are Memo fields.
- Field 3 has **Column Span** = 2.
- Field 6 is a Memo field and has **Column Span** = 2 and **CSS Class** = **MemoFieldWidth**. (Memo fields automatically have **Column Span** set to 2 and **CSS Class** = **MemoFieldWidth**.)



In this example, fields 1 through 5 have the CSS Class set to either **ComboBoxWidth** or **TextBoxWidth**. You can change the default widths by editing the CSS classes in CensusMain.css.

Related Topics

[Creating and Generating Web Views](#)

[Automatically Updating Choice Lists](#)

[Adding the Child Issues Tab](#)

[Changing Field Captions](#)

[Setting Field Labels](#)

[Spanning Columns](#)

[Applying CSS Styles](#)

[Planning](#)

Setting Up Notifications

Notifications allow you to alert users when issues are updated. For example, you can:

- Notify analysts and developers when issues are assigned to them.
- Notify support staff when employees update an issue.
- Notify employees and customers when issues are resolved.

Use notifications to alert users to changes to critical fields such as **Owner**, **Progress**, and **Priority**. Defining too many update notifications can overwhelm users with e-mail, resulting in users missing important notifications.

Related Topics

[Planning](#)

[Defining Notifications](#)

Chapter 3 - Projects

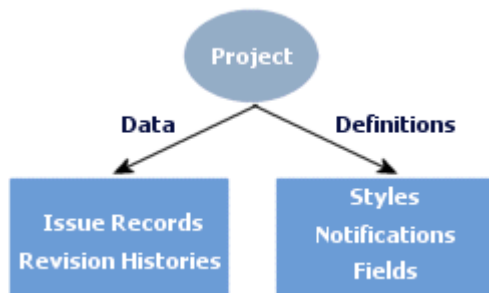
What is a Project?

In Vector HelpDesk, projects are used to keep issues in separate databases. How you organize your projects is up to you. You can have one project for tracking all issues, or you can have several projects. To create and manage projects, use [HelpDesk Admin](#).

A project includes:

- A database of issues and their revision histories, attachments, Service Level Agreements and e-mails.
- A set of project-specific definitions, which include styles (queries, sorts, layouts, reports, and report pages), the fields, e-mail templates, choice lists and notification definitions. These definitions are shared by all users of a project.

Project Structure



Related Topics

[Creating New Projects](#)

[Copying Definitions and Styles](#)

[Building a Project Template](#)

[Deleting Projects](#)

[Relocating Databases to SQL Server](#)

[Relocating Attachments](#)

[Editing Project Properties](#)

Creating Projects

Typically, you start a new project because you want to start tracking issues in a new database. However, there are other reasons for creating a new project. For example, you may want to:

- Build a template project and use it as a base for all other projects.
- Break a large project into several smaller projects.

New projects are always based on an existing project. When you create a new project, you can copy the issues, styles, notifications, Web views and the fields from the base project.

To create a project:

- 1 Start HelpDesk Admin, and click **New Project** in the **File** menu.
- 2 In the **Project Name** box, type the name of the new project.
- 3 In the **Base Project** list, click the project you want to use as a template for the new project.
- 4 In the **Groups Allowed to Open Project**, click the user groups that are allowed to access the project through HelpDesk Admin, HelpDesk Web Admin, the Web View Editor, or Web views.

Note that access to individual Vector HelpDesk components can be selectively disabled. For example, a group can have access to Web views of a project, but no access to HelpDesk Admin, HelpDesk Web Admin, and the Web View Editor.

5 Under **Global Styles and Notifications**:

- Click **None** to create a project with no queries, sorts, layouts, reports, or notifications. Only the fields are copied from the base project.
- Click **Copy from the Base Project** to copy the definitions of fields, queries, sorts, layouts, reports, and notifications to the new project.

If you are creating your first project, we recommend you use one of the sample projects that come with Vector HelpDesk as the base project. Copy the styles and notifications, but do not copy the issues and revision history. Also, read [Building a Project Template](#) before you start tracking issues.

- 6 If you want to copy the issues from the base project, click the **Copy issues and revision history from base project** check box.
- 7 If you don't want to copy the Web views from the base project, clear the **Copy Web views from the base project** check box.

Copying Web views from the base project can save time. For example, copying the Web views from HelpDesk means you don't have to manually set up timestamping in a new Web view.

Related Topics

[What is a Project?](#)

[Copying and Sharing Definitions](#)

[Building a Project Template](#)

[Deleting Projects](#)

[Relocating Databases to SQL Server](#)

[Relocating Attachments](#)

[Editing Project Properties](#)

Copying Definitions and Styles

A new project is always based on an existing project. The new project can start **empty** or **take a copy** of the styles, notifications, and fields in the base project. In the New Project dialog, select the option that corresponds to what you want to do with the new project:

- **None**

Clear the styles and notifications so you can build your own. Copy the fields from the base project and use it as a starting point.

- **Copy from the Base Project**

Copy the styles, notifications, and fields from the base project and use them as a starting point, or template, for the new project. This is the suggested way.

Why copy styles and notifications?

Copying styles and notifications allows you to configure your new project faster by making changes on existing styles instead of creating them from scratch. For example, a new report may be very similar to a report that exists in the base project, with the only difference being that you need to add or replace new fields that only exist in the new project. In this case, it is faster to copy the styles, and therefore the reports, from the base project and then create the new fields and update the report in the new project.

Related Topics

[Creating New Projects](#)

[Building a Project Template](#)

Building a Project Template

Before you start using Vector HelpDesk to track issues, you should build a project template. A project template is a project that acts as the base for all new projects. The project template contains styles and definitions common to all projects.

For example, a project template can define a standard set of queries, reports, and notifications. In addition, a project template can include a set of fields customized to match your company's process and terminology.

Using a project template allows you to reuse custom styles, notifications, and fields. Each new project can copy the styles and definitions from the project template.

Before you build a project template, you must evaluate your issue tracking and reporting requirements. For example, you should decide:

- Which custom fields and choice lists are required.
- Which standard queries and reports you want in each project.
- Which notifications are needed to the workflow in your process.

To build the actual project template, create a new project based on the HelpDesk project, then customize the issue fields and define the custom styles and notifications you need.

Related Topics

[What is a Project?](#)

[Creating New Projects](#)

[Copying Definitions and Styles](#)

Deleting Projects

To delete a project:

- 1 In HelpDesk Admin, click a project in the **Project** list.
- 2 On the **File** menu, click **Delete Project**.

Related Topics

[What is a Project?](#)

[Creating New Projects](#)

Editing Project Properties

The project properties are displayed when you click a project in the **Project** list.

Project Location

Location of the project files, which includes the definitions database.

Definitions Database

The name of the project definitions database. The definitions database contains the definitions of the fields, queries, sorts, layouts, reports, and notifications for the project.

Database Engine

Specifies whether the project uses Microsoft Access or SQL Server for the issue database.

Groups Allowed to Open Project

List of user groups that are allowed to open the project. Groups allowed to open a project can:

- Log on to Web views of the project (if they also have permission to open the views).
- Edit the project in HelpDesk Admin (depending on what features are enabled for the group).
- Edit views of that project in Web View Editor, or generate new views of that project.

If the Users group is allowed to open the project, then all groups can open the project. The Admins group is always allowed to open projects.

Current Users

Displays the users currently logged on to Web views of the project.

Name

Logon name of the user.

Date/Time

Date and time that the user logged on.

Workstation

The user's IP address or computer name.

Project

The user is logged on to a Web view of this project.

Virtual Directory

The virtual directory is the final part of the URL used to access the Web view. For example, if the virtual directory is named *helpdesk*, then the URL is `http://server/helpdesk`.

Virtual directories such as `helpdesk00`, `helpdesk01`, and `helpdesk02` are all accessed through the `//server/helpdesk` URL.

Application

This is always *Web View*. The **Logons Editor** also lists the Web View Editor and Web Admin.

Related Topics

[Relocating Databases to SQL Server](#)

[Relocating Attachments](#)

Chapter 4 - Editing Fields

About the Field Editor

Before you start recording and tracking issues, you probably need to customize some of the fields used to collect and display information. For example, the **Problem Area** and **Priority** fields should list choices that correspond to your organization's terminology and environment.

You may want to delete unused fields, add new fields to track additional information, or add new tabs. For example, you may want to add a tab for hardware configuration details.

HelpDesk Admin provides a Field Editor for editing fields. To open this editor, click **Field Editor** on the **Project** menu. The Field Editor allows you to edit field definitions, but to export fields to Web views use the Web View Editor.

Editing Fields

Click a field in the **Field** list to edit, copy, rename, or delete the field. The **Field** list contains all the fields defined in the project.

The buttons beside the **Field** list allow you to create new fields or copy, delete, or edit the selected field.

Destination Tab


Tabs allow you to group sets of related fields.

Labels

A field has two labels. One label is the field name, which appears in choice lists such as the Field list in any of the HelpDesk Admin editors. The other label is the caption that appears beside the field in a Web view.

Data

Under **Data**, you specify what type of input the field accepts: text, dates, times, numbers, yes/no values, or choices from a list.

The choices displayed in a choice list field are defined in a choice table. To edit and create choice tables, click the browse  button adjacent to the **Table Containing Choices** list.

Field Is

The **Field Is** check boxes give you control over how the field behaves in a Web view. **Required** fields cannot be left blank. **Visible** fields appear in a Web view, instead of being hidden. **Enabled** fields accept user input, while disabled fields are read-only (they display data but do not accept user input).

The **Read-Only For** list specifies which user groups cannot edit the field.

Show in Choice Lists

This check box controls whether you can use the field to build queries, reports, and other styles.

Maintain Revision History

This check box controls whether Vector HelpDesk tracks revisions to the field, and whether you can use the field for update notifications (update notifications are generated when the value of a field changes).

Applying Changes

To apply changes to fields, HelpDesk Admin must log off the users who are logged on to Web views of the project.

Related Topics

[Customizing Fields](#)

[Setting Default Values for Fields](#)

[Adding Fields](#)

[Editing Choice Lists](#)

[Removing Fields](#)

[Working with Tabs](#)

About Adding Fields

You can add fields to any of the tabs. New fields are automatically available in all Vector HelpDesk editors, such as the Query Editor and Report Editor.

New fields are not automatically exported to Web views. You must use the Web View Editor to export the fields and regenerate the Web views.

To use a field as a starting point for a new field, click an entry in the **Field** list and click .

Related Topics

[Customizing Fields](#)

[Setting Default Values for Fields](#)

[Generating Web Views](#)

[About the Field Editor](#)

[Adding New Fields to Reports](#)

[Making Fields Required](#)

[Making Fields Read-Only](#)

[Using Fields to Define Styles](#)

[Tracking Changes](#)

[Choosing a Destination Tab](#)

[Setting Field Labels](#)

[Choosing a Field Type](#)

[Setting the Field Size](#)

[Removing Fields](#)

[Working with Tabs](#)

Adding Fields to Reports

When you add new fields, you must update the reports that Vector HelpDesk uses to print issues and to format notifications:

- **Current Issue - Detailed** prints the current issue in a Web view.
- **Notification - Detailed Record** and **Notification - Summary** formats the contents or attachments of e-mail notifications.

Related Topic

[Customizing Fields](#)

[Adding Fields](#)

[Specifying Notification Contents](#)

Making Fields Required

By default, users can leave the Web view fields blank when they submit an issue. To force users to complete a field before saving an issue, click the **Required** check box. The field label is highlighted in Web views to show that it is mandatory.

Related Topics

[Adding Fields](#)

[Making Fields Read-Only](#)

Making Fields Read-Only

To make a field read-only for all users, clear the **Enabled** check box.

To make a field read-only for a specific user group, click the **Enabled** check box, and then click the group in the **Read-Only For** list.

Related Topics

[Displaying Read-Only Fields](#)

[Adding Fields](#)

Using Fields to Define Styles

If you don't need to use a field to build queries, sorts, layouts, reports, or notifications, clear the **Show in Choice Lists** check box. This removes the field from the **Field** lists of editors, such as the Query Editor and the Ad-hoc Query Editor of a Web view.

For example, the **Attachments** field is not needed for queries, sorts, layouts, reports, or notifications. How often would you expect users to search for or sort issues based on the files attached to an issue?

Related Topics

[Customizing Fields](#)

[Adding Fields](#)

Tracking Changes

If you don't want to track changes to a field, clear the **Maintain Revision History** check box. Vector HelpDesk doesn't update the revision history when a user changes the field.

For a memo field, Vector HelpDesk doesn't track the changes to the field value. Instead, it marks the field as modified.

Notes

- To send notifications when a field is updated, select the field's **Maintain Revision History** check box.

Related Topics

[Adding Fields](#)

[Sending Notifications of Field Update](#)

Choosing a Destination Tab

The **Destination Tab** specifies the tab to which the new field is added.

Fields added to the **Contact** tab are read-only (visible but not enabled). These fields are also added to the **Users** and **Contact** page in HelpDesk Web Admin, which is where you enter data into the fields.


Related Topics

[Adding Fields](#)

[Working with Tabs](#)

Setting Field Labels

Field Caption is the label displayed by the field in a Web view. You can override this label in the Web View Editor by setting the **Caption** attribute.

Choice Lists is the label that appears in any choice list that allows a user to choose a field (for example, in the **Field** list of the Ad-hoc Query editor of a Web view). To change this label, click  to rename the field.

Related Topics

[Adding Fields](#)

[Changing Field Captions](#)

Choosing a Field Type

Currency, Date, Number, Text, and Time

These are text entry fields. Vector HelpDesk validates the text entered in these field types, and displays a warning if users enter invalid characters or uses the wrong format.

For example, **Number** fields accept only numeric values, and **Currency**, **Date**, and **Time** fields require the input values to follow the Windows Regional Settings.

Memo

A **Memo** field is a text field that allows a large amount of characters to be input.

Single Choice and Multi Choice

These fields are drop-down choice lists. Choice lists present fixed lists of choices to the user. **Multi Choice** fields allow a user to select one or more choices.

Yes/No

This is a check box.

Related Topics

[Adding Fields](#)

[Setting the Field Size](#)

[Adding Pop-up Editors to Memo Fields](#)

Setting the Field Size

For **Text** fields, the field size is the maximum number of characters that a user can type in the field. For **Number** fields, however, the size is determined by the selected data size:

Size	Description
Byte	Stores numbers from 0 to 255 (no fractions). Decimal precision: None Storage size: 1 bytes
Integer	Stores numbers from -32,768 to 32,767 (no fractions). Decimal precision: None Storage size: 2 bytes
Long Integer	Stores numbers from -2,147,483,648 to 2,147,483,647 (no fractions). Decimal precision: None Storage size: 4 bytes
Single	Stores numbers from -3.402823E38 to -1.401298E-45 for negative values and from 1.401298E-45 to 3.402823E38 for positive values. Decimal precision: 7 Storage size: 4 bytes
Double	Stores numbers from -1.79769313486231E308 to -4.94065645841247E-324 for negative values and from 1.79769313486231E308 to 4.94065645841247E-324 for positive values. Decimal precision: 15 Storage size: 8 bytes

Related Topics

[Choosing a Field Type](#)

About Removing Fields

To remove a field, you can either delete it or hide it. Alternatively, you can choose not export the field when you generate your Web views.

You can also disable fields by [making them read-only](#).

Related Topics

[About the Field Editor](#)

[Adding Fields](#)

[Deleting Fields](#)

[Hiding Fields](#)

[Removing Fields from Web Views](#)

Deleting Fields

Deleting a field removes it and all stored data from the issue database. If you don't want to lose the data, you can disable the field, hide it, or remove it from the Web views.

You can delete a field only if it is not used in any query, sort, layout, report, or notification.

Related Topics

[Hiding Fields in all Web Views](#)

[Hiding Fields in specific Web Views](#)

[Removing Fields from Web Views](#)

Hiding Fields in all Web Views

Because you can remove a field from a Web view by not exporting the field, the ability to hide fields is not often required. However, you may want to hide a field if some of the queries you export use the field, but you don't want users to see it.

To hide a field in all Web views of a project, clear the [Visible](#) check box in the Field Editor. To hide a field in specific Web views, use the **Visible** attribute of the field in the Web View Editor.

Notes

- Hidden fields are still available in editors unless you clear the **Show in Choice Lists** check box.
- Queries do not work if fields used in the query definition are not in the Web view.

Related Topics

[Deleting Fields](#)

[Removing Fields from Web Views](#)

[Hiding Fields in Web Views](#)

Removing Fields from Web Views

Using the Web View Editor, you can remove fields from some Web views and leave the fields in other views.

Related Topics

[Deleting Fields](#)

[Hiding Fields in all Web Views](#)

[Hiding Fields in specific Web Views](#)

[Exporting Fields to Web Views](#)

About Choice Lists

A choice list is a list of choices displayed in a selection list on an HTML form. The choices are defined in a choice table.

Related Topics

[Editing Choice Tables](#)

[Editing Choice Text](#)

[Renaming Choice List Tables](#)

[Sorting Choice Lists](#)

[Editing the Progress and State Lists](#)

[Automatically Updating Choice Lists](#)

[Setting Default Values for Fields](#)

[Global Choice Lists](#)

Editing Choice Tables

You can edit the choices in the list from HelpDesk Admin or from HelpDesk Web Admin. Both allow you to add new choices, delete choices, change choice text, and reorder choices.

Using HelpDesk Admin

Use HelpDesk Admin when you want to create new choice tables. Using the Field Editor, you can create the choice table *and* associate it with a field.

Also, use HelpDesk Admin when you want to edit the **Progress** choice table. Progress choices must be mapped to State choices (see [Editing the Progress and State Lists](#)) using the Field editor.

When to use HelpDesk Web Admin

Use HelpDesk Web Admin to edit existing choice tables (for example, when you want to edit choice text or add new choices). While you can create new choice tables in HelpDesk Web Admin, you cannot associate the new choice table with a field—for that you need to use the Field Editor in HelpDesk Admin.

Also, don't use HelpDesk Web Admin to edit the **Progress** choice list. Use HelpDesk Admin instead. All Progress choices must be mapped to a State choice, and you cannot edit (or even view) that mapping in HelpDesk Web Admin.

Any new choices added to the **Progress** list are not mapped to a State choice. If you edit the text of a progress choice and the new text changes the sense of the choice, the **State** field must be changed. For example, if you change **Resolved** to **Reopened**, then **Reopened** still corresponds to the **Closed** state until it is remapped.

HelpDesk Web Admin can also delete choice lists when they are not referenced by a field.

Advantages of HelpDesk Web Admin

The advantage of HelpDesk Web Admin is that you can edit choice lists across the Web. You don't have to be sitting at a machine where HelpDesk Admin is installed. Also, you must use HelpDesk Web Admin to define global choice lists.

Related Topics

[Editing Choice Text](#)

[Renaming Choice List Tables](#)

[Sorting Choice Lists](#)

[Editing the Substate and State Lists](#)

[Automatically Updating Choice Lists](#)

[Setting Default Values for Fields](#)

[Global Choice Lists](#)

Editing Choice Text

When you change the text of a choice, you must update any queries that test the choice value. For example, consider this query:

```
Progress = Assigned
```

If you change the choice text from **Assigned** to **InProgress** in the choice table, the query will not find any issues. Issues store the index of the choice, but queries store the text.

Renaming Choice List Tables

HelpDesk Web Admin (in the **Choice List** list on the **Choices** tab) displays a name associated with the choice table, not the name of the choice list field.

A choice table has two names: the name of the choice table (for example, **tblState**) and a friendly name (for example, **State**). HelpDesk Web Admin displays the friendly name. You can change the friendly name by renaming the choice table in HelpDesk Web Admin.

Related Topics

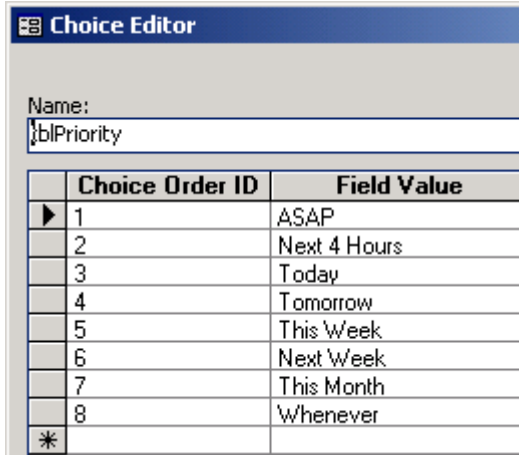
[Editing Choice Tables](#)

Sorting Choice Lists

Web Views can list choices in any order. For example, a non-alphabetic choice order such as Highest, High, Medium, Low, Lowest is more appropriate for a list of relative values than the alphabetic order.

When you create a new choice list, you choose how you want to order the list. The **Allow Choice Order Sort** check box controls whether a choice list supports non-alphabetic choice orders and sorts.

By default, Vector HelpDesk lists choices in alphabetic order. However, when you allow choice order sorts, you can define the sort order by assigning a numeric ID to each choice. This ID controls the position of the choice in the list (1st, 2nd, and so on).



Related Topics

[Editing Choice Tables](#)

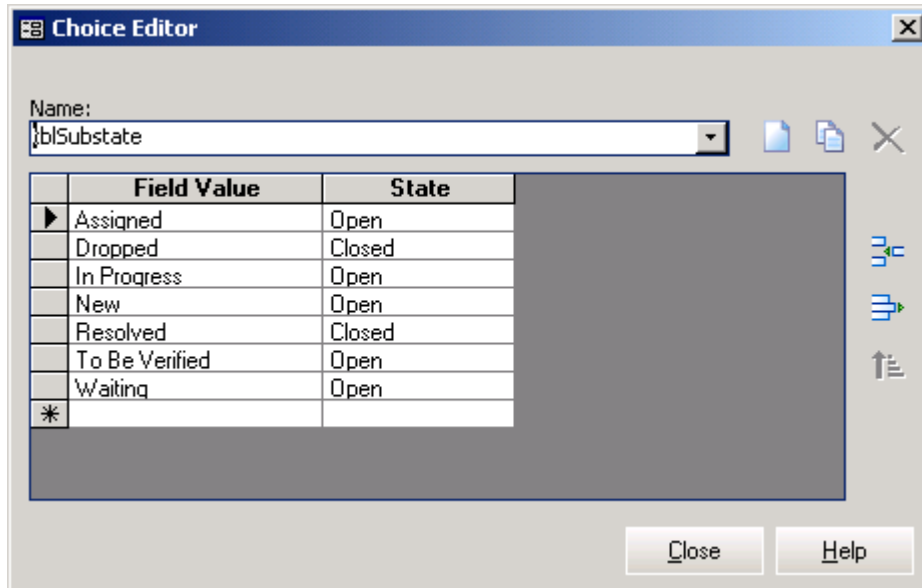
[Editing Choice Text](#)

[Editing the Substate and State Lists](#)

Editing the Progress and State Lists

The **Progress** choice list is a special type of choice list. When a user selects a choice from the **Progress** list, the **State** field is set to **Open** or **Closed**.

To change the mapping of progress values to state values, use HelpDesk Admin. Its choice table for the **Progress** list contains an extra column that maps **Progress** choices to **State** choices. You must complete this column when you add or edit the choices in the **Progress** list.



When you edit the **State** choice table, remember that the **Closed** choice sets the **Closed Date** and **Time** fields. So, for example, changing the choice text from **Closed** may confuse users.

Notes

If you edit the **Progress** choice list, check that workflow rules based on the **Progress** field still work.

Related Topics


[Editing Choice Tables](#)


[Editing Choice Text](#)


Global Choice Lists

Global choice lists are shared by all projects.

To define a global choice list

- 1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Choices** tab.
- 2 In the **Project** list, click **Global Choice Lists**.
- 3 Click  to create a new choice list.

Alternatively, to base the new list on an existing list, select an entry in **Choice List** and click .

- 4 In the Add Choice List dialog:
 - a In the **Choice List Name** box, type a name for the database table in which you want to store the list choices.
 - b In **Choice List Caption**, type a display name for the choice list (this is the name displayed in in HelpDesk Web Admin).
 - c Select the **Non-Alphabetical Choice Order** check box if you want to define a non-alphabetical order for the choices in the list (for example, **Applications, System, Hardware**).
 - d In the **Choices** section, click  to add a new choice to the list.

To associate the new choice list with a field, use the Field Editor in HelpDesk Admin, then regenerate the Web views that use the field.

Related Topics

[Editing Choice Tables](#)

Working with Tabs

HelpDesk Web Admin allows you to add new tabs to a project. After you add a new tab, use the Field Editor to add new fields to the tab.

You can also reorder the tabs, change the tab names, and delete tabs. To delete tabs you must delete all the fields on the tab or move the fields to another tab.

Chapter 5 - Finding and Listing Issues

About Queries

To build queries in HelpDesk Admin, click **Query Editor** on the **Project** menu. In the Query editor, use **And** and **Or** operators to combine multiple search conditions. You can control the order in which search conditions are evaluated using parentheses.

Notes

- To base a new query on an existing query, choose an entry in the **Query Name** list, click **Copy**, and name the new query.
- To test a query, click **Preview**.

Related Topics

[Exporting Queries to Web Views](#)

[Searching by Dates](#)

[Searching for Unassigned Issues](#)

[Finding Issues for the Current User](#)

[Finding New Issues](#)

[Finding Parent Issues](#)

[Searching Choices Lists with Relational Operators](#)

[Previewing Queries](#)

[Saving Queries](#)

[Inserting Parentheses Around Search Conditions](#)

[Searching for Strings](#)

[Searching for Wildcards](#)

Searching by Dates

Use the **<Today>** value to match the current date. For example, you can search for all issues submitted or updated today.

To search against specific dates, double-click the **Value** box, then double-click a date in the calendar.

Related Topics

[Building Queries](#)

Searching for Unassigned Issues

By default, the **Owner** field is set to **<None>**. You can use the value **<None>** in queries to find unassigned issues.

Related Topics

[Building Queries](#)

[Searching for Null Values](#)

[Searching for Strings](#)

[Searching for Wildcards](#)

Finding Issues for the Current User

Use the value <User> to match the current user. With <User>, you can build generic queries that work for any user. For example, the **My Assigned Issues** query finds all issues assigned to the current user.

Related Topics

[Building Queries](#)

Finding New Issues

To find all issues that have not been updated since they were first submitted, search against the revision number: **Revision Number = 1**.

Related Topics

[Building Queries](#)

Finding Parent Issues

You can find the parent issues of a child issue by searching against the **Child Issues** field. For example, to find the parent issues of the issue 22, use the Advanced Query editor to search for **Child Issues = 22**.

To find all parent issues, use the Advanced query editor to search for **Child Issues <> 0**.

Related Topics

[Building Queries](#)

Searching Choices Lists with Relational Operators

The relational operators are `<`, `<=`, `>=`, and `>`. When you search choice lists with a relational operator, the search is based on the order of the choices in the list.

For example, if the choices in the **Problem Area** list are ordered:

```
Apps - Goldmine
Apps - MS Excel
Apps - MS Outlook
Apps - MS Word
Apps - Other
HW - Disk
...
```

the query **Problem Area < HW - Disk** returns all the application-related issues.

When a choice list uses a non-alphabetical sort order, the sense of the relational operators is reversed. For example, if the **Priority** list is ordered:

```
Highest
High
Medium
Low
Lowest
```

the query **Priority > Medium** returns issues marked **High** or **Highest**, and the query **Priority < Medium** returns issues marked **Low** or **Lowest**.

Related Topics

[Building Queries](#)

Previewing Queries

To check the results of a query without closing the Query editor, click the **Preview** button. This runs the query and displays the results in a preview window.

Related Topics

[Building Queries](#)

Saving Queries

To save changes and continue editing, click **Apply**.


To save changes and exit the Query editor, click **Close**.

Inserting Parentheses Around Search Conditions

When you combine search conditions with the **And** and **Or** operators, you may not always get the results you expect. For example, suppose you want to find all new issues with priorities **ASAP** or **Today**.

```
Progress = New And  
Priority = ASAP Or  
Priority = Today
```

And has a higher precedence than **Or**, so this query finds all new issues with priority **ASAP**, plus all issues (not just the new ones) with priority **Today**.

To find only new issues with priorities **ASAP** and **Today**, click the **Priority = Today** search condition, then click  to place parentheses around the conditions joined by **Or**. For example:

```
Progress = New And  
(Priority = ASAP Or  
Priority = Today)
```

Related Topics

[Building Queries](#)

Searching for Strings

The **Contains** operator performs a case-insensitive search for a string of text anywhere in a field. You can use **Contains** to search for keywords in the **Summary** or **Description** fields. This allows you to package common keyword searches such as predefined queries. For example:

```
Summary Contains printer
```

You can also use **Contains** to find all choices in a list that contain the same string of characters. For example, the choices in the default **Problem Area** list start with "HW - ", "Apps - ", or "System - ". So **Contains "HW -"** finds all hardware problems.

Related Topics

[Building Queries](#)

[Searching for Wildcards](#)

[Searching for Null Values](#)

[Searching for Unassigned Issues](#)

Searching for Null Values

It is possible to perform a search to determine whether or not a value has been set for a field. When a field has no value, it is considered to be **<Null>**; on the other hand, when a field has a value, it is **<Not Null>**.

The following steps describe how these macros can be used in queries:

- 1 Open the **Query Editor** for the desired project.
- 2 Create the query using **<Null>** and **<Not Null>** as desired (use **Like** for the **Test** column).

Example:

```
Priority Like <Null> AND Severity Like <Not Null>
```

NOTE: Searching for null values in *Date*, *Time*, and *Number* fields will require a few additional steps. Please contact support for more information.

- 3 Export the query to the Web view(s) and regenerate the view(s).

NOTE: Saved queries with **<Null>** and **<Not Null>** can only be used from the Web views, not from the Preview in the Admin editors.

It is also possible to use the **<Null>** and **<Not Null>** using the Ad-hoc Query editor of any given Web view. Simply select a **Field**, choose **Like** for the **Test** option, and type either **<Null>** or **<Not Null>** in the **Value** textbox.

Related Topics

[Searching for Strings](#)

[Searching for Wildcards](#)

Searching for Wildcards

To provide flexibility in the specification of search patterns, the **Like** and **Not Like** operators support wildcard characters. Using wildcards, you can search for inexact patterns of text in any field.

Wildcard	Matches
_	Any single character. For example: run_time matches run time or run-time
%	Zero or more characters. For example: Contains run%time matches any string that contains runtime , run time , or run-time . Like Install% matches any string that starts with Install . Like %run%time% matches the same strings as Contains run%time .
[charlist]	Any single character in charlist. Can include spaces, but not the right bracket (]) character. For example: SP[56] matches SP5 or SP6 Use a hyphen to specify a range of characters. For example: [1-36-9] matches the digits 1, 2, 3, 6, 7, 8, or 9 To match the hyphen character, the hyphen must be either the first or last character in charlist. For example: [-0-9] or [0-9-] match any digit or a minus sign
[!charlist]	Any single character not in charlist. For example: [!tb]rash matches crash but not trash or brash

To search for the wildcard characters _ and %, you must enclose them in brackets. For example, to search for a percent sign, use the pattern [%].

Related Topics

[Building Queries](#)

[Searching for Strings](#)

[Searching for Null Values](#)

[Searching for Unassigned Issues](#)

About Sorts

You can sort the Summary List by issue number, priority, state, progress, owner, or any other field or combination of fields. Vector HelpDesk allows you to define sorts, which are named sets of sort criteria. Sorts appear in the Sort list on the Summary toolbar.

To define a sort in HelpDesk Admin:

- 1 Click **Sort Editor** on the **Project** menu to open the Sort editor.
- 2 In the Sort editor, choose the fields you want to use as sort keys. The first field is the primary sort key, the second field is the secondary key, and so on.

For example, if you sort by **Owner** and **Priority**, all issues belonging to the same person are grouped together, and the issues for each owner are sorted by priority.

To base a new sort on an existing sort, choose a sort from the **Name** list, click **Copy**, and name the new sort.

Related Topics

[Sort Orders](#)

[Previewing Sorts](#)

[Saving Sorts](#)

Sort Orders

Choice Order Ascending and **Choice Order Descending** sort the issues based on the order of the choices in the choice list, not on alphabetical order.

For example, a choice list may contain the values **High, Medium, Low** in that order. An alphabetical order for the sort list would be **High, Low, Medium** or **Medium, Low, High**, which doesn't make as much sense.

Related Topics

[Defining Sorts](#)

Previewing Sorts

To check the results of a sort without closing the Sort editor, click the **Preview** button. This runs the sort and displays the results in a preview window.

Related Topics

[Defining Sorts](#)

Saving Sorts

To save changes and continue editing, click **Apply**.

To save changes and exit the Sort editor, click **Close**.

Related Topics

[Defining Sorts](#)

About Layouts

Different queries can list different information in the **Summary List**. For example, a query that lists only the issues assigned to the user does not need to display the **Owner** column, unlike a query that lists all issues assigned to a group.

Vector HelpDesk allows you to define layout styles that specify the column layout and contents of the **Summary List**. Layout styles appear in the **Layout** list on the **Summary Toolbar**.

To define a layout in HelpDesk Admin, click **Layout Editor** on the **Project** menu to open the **Layout Editor**.

Each column in the **Summary List** corresponds to a field. Choose the fields you want to list, and set the column widths and alignments. By default, field names are used as column headings, but you can change this by entering a new heading in the **Title** cell.

Notes

To base a new layout on an existing layout, choose the layout from the **Name** list, click **Copy**, and name the new layout.

Related Topics

[Previewing Layouts](#)

[Saving Layouts](#)

Previewing Layouts

To check a layout definition without closing the Layout editor, click the **Preview** button.

Related Topics

[Defining Layouts](#)

[Saving Layouts](#)

Saving Layouts

To save changes and continue editing, click **Apply**.

To save changes and exit the Layout editor, click **Close**.

Related Topics

[Defining Layouts](#)

[Previewing Layouts](#)

Chapter 6 - Reporting

About Reports

Reports help you understand and assess the state of your project. An issue tracking system like Vector HelpDesk contains a lot of valuable information about a project. Reports allow you to access this information, break it down, analyze it, and present it.

Vector HelpDesk provides three types of reports: [Summary](#) (cross-tab), [Listing](#), and [Time](#) (trend).

In addition to defining standard Listing reports in HelpDesk Admin, you can also use Crystal Reports, which must be purchased separately, to customize Listing reports by adding features such as charts, formulas, field highlighting, and running totals

To design reports in HelpDesk Admin, click **Reports** on the **Project** menu, and then click **Report Editor**.

Related Topics

[Viewing Reports](#)

[Changing Report Viewers](#)

[Selecting Issues for a Report](#)

[Defining Summary Reports](#)

[Defining Listing Reports](#)

[Defining Time Reports](#)

[Defining Report Pages](#)

Viewing Reports

Depending on the report format and definition, you can view reports as text or as line, bar, or pie charts. Charts can be in either 2D or 3D.

You can view Summary, Time, and Listing reports in HelpDesk Admin. You can also view Listing reports in Web views. By default, Web views use HTML to format and display Listing reports, and Crystal Reports for custom reports (Vector HelpDesk includes the Crystal Reports Runtime Software).

Related Topics

[About Reports](#)

[Changing Report Viewers](#)

Changing Report Viewers

Options control which report viewers are used by the Web views:

Standard Report Engine specifies the report viewer used for Listing reports.

Custom Report Engine specifies the report viewer used for Custom reports.

To set these options, log on to HelpDesk Admin, and on the **Tools** menu, click **Options**.

Note: If you have a version of Crystal Reports that is newer than version 9, you must still select **Crystal Reports 9** as the report viewer.

By default, Vector HelpDesk uses the included Crystal Reports v9.0 Runtime Software to display custom reports, and a built-in HTML report engine to display listing reports, print issues from the Web Views, and format notification contents such as attachments.

It is possible to use the Crystal Reports engine for all the Listing reports, rather than the HTML report engine.

For more information about this, see the [Building Custom Reports](#) topic.

Related Topics

[Viewing Reports](#)

[Building Custom Reports](#)

[Defining Listing Reports](#)

Selecting Issues to Include in a Report

In the **Query** list, choose a query to extract issues from the issue database and include them in the report. For example, if you want a report that breaks down the open issue count, then use the Open Issues query.

In Web views, users can use a combination of predefined and ad-hoc queries to specify what issues to include in a report. The Web-based report viewer allows users to generate reports using the current contents of the Summary List, or using the current issue.

Related Topics

[About Reports](#)

[Defining Summary Reports](#)

[Defining Listing Reports](#)

[Defining Time Reports](#)

[Defining Report Pages](#)

Summary Reports

Summary reports are like spreadsheets. They provide a numerical break down of the state of your project. Use Summary reports to answer questions like: "How many of the open issues are urgent?" or "Is there a relationship between department and issue priority?"

You can view Summary reports in HelpDesk Admin.

Adding Rows

Each row corresponds to a possible value of a choice-list field (single or multi). For example, you can add rows for all users in the **Owner** list, or just for the help desk analysts in the list.

A *row* is different in each type of report.

Text (cross-tab) reports

Each row is a row in the cross-tab table.

Bar charts

A bar chart shows bars for each row. That is, the *rows* define the horizontal axis, while the *column* defines what the bars represent.

If you don't include a column, then there is one bar for each row. This bar represents the total number of issues for the row. If you include a column, side-by-side bars are displayed for each row.

Pie charts

Each row is a slice of the pie. To ensure that the slices add up to 100%, select **<All>** in the **Rows** column.

Adding Columns

Each column corresponds to a possible value of a choice-list field (single or multi). For example, you can add columns for all possible priority values, or just for the highest priorities.

Like rows, columns mean different things in the different report formats:

- **Text (cross-tab) reports**

Each column is a column in the cross-tab table.

- **Bar charts**

The column specifies what bars to display for each row.

- **Pie charts**

Columns are not used in pie charts.

Calculating Totals

You can insert rows to calculate the totals of columns of numbers. Choose **<Total>** from the **Field Name** list, then choose the groups for which you want a total.

A *group* is the set of rows for a given field. The **Group** column displays the group ID. When you add a total row, use these IDs to specify which groups of rows you want to total.

A **Total** row sums only the numbers in the selected groups. So, each group of rows can have its own subtotal. To add a grand total, choose **<ALL>**.

To add a column that calculates the totals of rows of numbers, select the **Total** check box.

Using Totals and the Show Setting

Suppose you want to break down the open issue count, not by individual owner, but by groups of owners. For example, you might want to see the distribution of open issues between the analysts group and the group leaders

group.

For both groups, add a group of rows and a total row. The group of rows (for example, row 1 below) contains a row for each help desk analyst. The total row for analysts (row 2) totals up the individual numbers to give a group total.

Showing Totals for Groups

Horizontal:

	Field Name	Rows	Title	Show	Group
	Owner	Help Desk Analyst	Analysts	<input type="checkbox"/>	1
	Total1	Group1: Owner	Analysts	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2
	Owner	Help Desk Group Leader	Group Leaders	<input type="checkbox"/>	3
	Total2	Group3: Owner	Group Leaders	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	4
▶				<input type="checkbox"/>	

To hide the rows for the individual owners in a group, clear the **Show** check box.

Customizing Row and Column Headings

Use the **Title** fields to enter the heading text for rows and columns.

Controlling Column Width in Text Reports

Use the **Column Width** box to set a maximum width for all columns in a report, including the column headings.

Examples

Text (cross-tab) report

A Summary report can break down the open issue count by owner and by priority.

Query: Page:

Horizontal:

	Field Name	Rows	Title	Show	Group
	Owner	Help Desk Analyst <input type="text" value=""/>	Owner	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1
	Total1	<All>		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2
*				<input type="checkbox"/>	

Vertical:

Field Name: Columns:

Title: Column Width:

Total

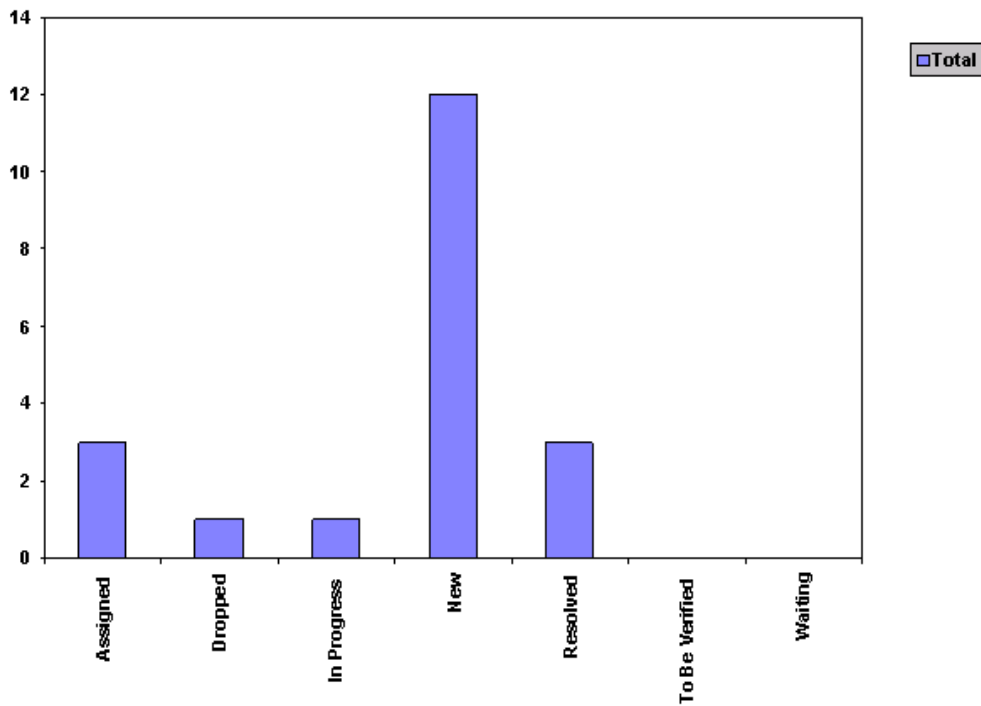
This example includes a row for each help desk analyst, and columns for the priorities ASAP, Next 4 Hours, Today, and Tomorrow. The report also includes totals.

Assigned By Priority

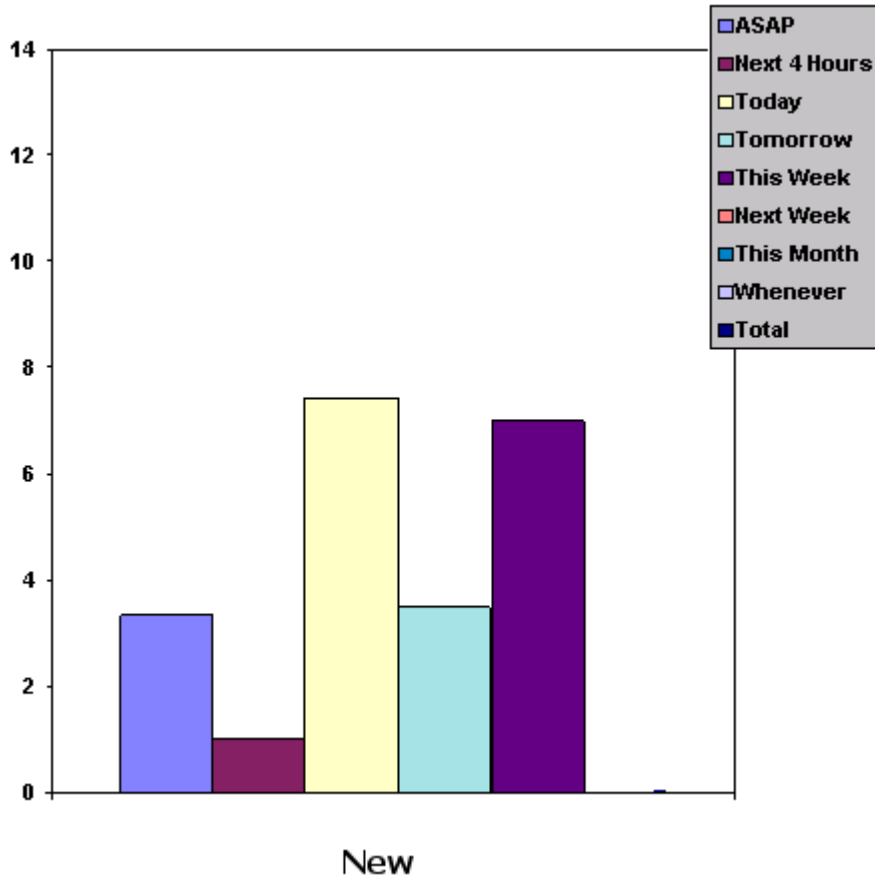
Owner	Priority				
	Total	ASAP	Next 4 Hours	Today	Tomorrow
Help Desk Analyst	2	2	0	0	0
Total1	2	2	0	0	0

Bar chart

Bar charts show data as vertical bars. If you have no columns (in the **Columns** list, click <None>), the bar chart shows a total for each row.



If you add columns, the bar chart shows a series of side-by-side bars for each value of the horizontal field. For example, to show an issue breakdown by priority, enter **Progress = New**.



Pie charts

A pie chart shows a percentage breakdown of the issues with each slice of the pie corresponds to a row. Since a whole pie represents 100%, select **<All>** in the **Rows** list.

Apps - MS Word
43%



Apps - MS Outlook
57%

In a pie chart, columns are ignored, and you cannot have more than one group of rows or a total row. If the report defines more than one group of rows or a total row, clear the **Show** check box before you view the pie chart.

Related Topics

- [About Reports](#)
- [Viewing Reports](#)
- [Selecting Issues to Include in a Report](#)

[Defining Listing Reports](#)

[Defining Time Reports](#)

[Defining Report Pages](#)

Listing Reports

Listings extract and present subsets of the information entered in issues. Listings are available only as text.

You can view Listing reports in HelpDesk Admin and in Web views. You can use Crystal Reports to customize the version of the listing report that is displayed in Web views.

Defining Listing Reports

Listing reports are listings of information entered in issues. Use Listing reports to extract specific information from issues.

For example, you can use a Listing report to print a summary of the resolution details for each resolved issue, or to print only the issue number, owner, and summary for each issue. With Listing reports, you choose a set of issue fields, and only those fields are included in the report.

Query

Retrieves the issues included in the report

Sort

Sorts the issues.

Page

Header, footer, and title to apply to the report.

Tabular

Tabular listings list issues in the columns of a table. A tabular report is like the Summary List, except that you can use a report template to add things like a report title or page numbering.

Issue Number	Priority	Submitted Date	Submitted Time	Progress	Assigned Date
1	ASAP	12/11/2001	12:46:43 PM	Resolved	12/11/2001
2	This Week	12/11/2001	12:48:00 PM	In Progress	12/12/2001
3	This Week	12/11/2001	1:05:45 PM	Assigned	12/13/2001
4	ASAP	12/11/2001	4:36:33 PM	Assigned	12/13/2001
5	Today	12/11/2001	4:38:20 PM	New	
6	Today	12/11/2001	4:59:59 PM	New	

Multicolumn

Multicolumn listings arrange issue information into blocks; these are repeated down the page for each issue.

Issue Number	1
Priority	ASAP
Submitted Date	12/11/2001
Submitted Time	12:46:43 PM
Progress	Resolved
Assigned Date	12/11/2001
Assigned Time	4:15:17 PM
Problem Area	System - Printing
Owner	Help Desk Analyst
Summary	Cannot print from my office PC.

Custom Report

Marks the report as a custom report. In a Web view, custom reports are listed on the **Custom** tab of the View

Reports dialog. Custom reports are typically Listing reports customized with Crystal Reports.

Related Topics

[About Reports](#)

[Viewing Reports](#)

[Changing Report Viewers](#)

[Selecting Issues to Include in a Report](#)

[Defining Summary Reports](#)

[Defining Time Reports](#)

[Defining Report Pages](#)

Time Reports

Time reports show trends over time. Use Time reports to answer questions like: "What is the issue arrival rate?", or "How fast are issues being resolved?"

Defining the Time Axis

The time axis divides the reporting period into intervals of days, weeks, months, quarters, or years (this is the granularity of the report). The Time report then sorts the issues into the time intervals, and counts the number of issues in each interval.

To sort issues into time intervals, a Time report uses a master date. The master date is a specified in an issue field such as **Submitted Date**, **Closed Date**, **Assigned Date**, or **Update Date**.

Master Date	Description
Assigned Date	The date an issue was assigned. For a report that shows the number of open issues per analyst or developer, you could use the Assigned Date instead of the Submitted Date .
Closed Date	The date an issue was closed. This happens when Progress is set to a value that maps to the Closed state. Use this date for reports that show the number of issues fixed over time (fix rate reports).
Submitted Date	The date an issue was submitted. Use this date for Time reports that show the number of submitted, open, or closed issues over time.
Update Date	The date an issue was last modified.

Including All Dates

Select the **Show dates with no values** check box to show days, weeks, months, quarters, and years when there were no issues. For example, in a report that shows the daily arrival rate of new issues during the last week, you probably want to see a value for each day in the week, even if that value is 0.

Showing Interval Totals

When the **Cumulative** check box is selected, a Time report accumulates the number of issues from one interval to the next. For example, suppose you have a Time report that shows the number of submitted issues per week. To see how the total number of submitted issues grows week by week, select the **Cumulative** check box. To see the number of issues submitted each week, clear the **Cumulative** check box.

Defining Reporting Periods

Enter specific **From** and **To** dates, or choose one of the When conditions: **This Month**, **This Quarter**, or **This Year**. You can also combine **From** or **To** with **When**. For example, if the year is 2006 and you set **From** to **3/3/06** and **When** to **This Year**, your reporting period would be 3/3/06 to 12/31/06.

Including Totals

Select the **Total** check box. For each time interval, the Time report shows the total number of issues included in the report.

Controlling Column Width in Tabular Time Reports

Use the **Column Width** box to set a maximum width for all columns in a report, including the column headings.

Defining the Field Axis

The field axis determines which issues a report counts. For example, to include the number of **ASAP** and **Today** priority issues, choose these **Priority** field values as the columns. The Time report then counts the number of

ASAP and **Today** priority issues in each interval.

Each column corresponds to a possible value of a choice-list field (single or multi). For example, you can add columns for all possible priority values, or just for the highest priorities (ASAP, Next 4 Hours, Today).

Text (cross-tab) reports

Each column is a column in the cross-tab table.

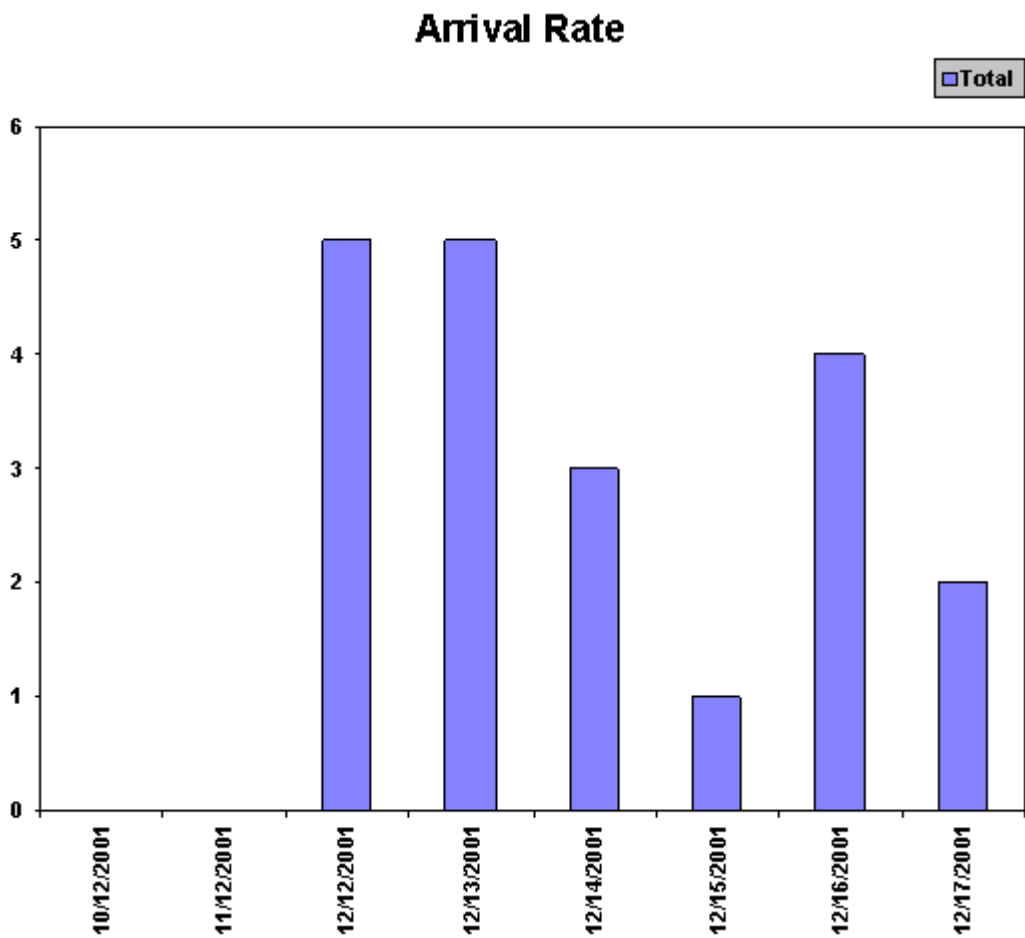
Line charts

Each column is a line in the line chart.

Bar charts

The column specifies what bars to display for each row.

If you set **Field Name** to **<None>**, then the Time report provides a total of all issues for each interval.



Related Topics

- [About Reports](#)
- [Viewing Reports](#)
- [Selecting Issues to Include in a Report](#)
- [Defining Summary Reports](#)

[Defining Listing Reports](#)

[Defining Report Pages](#)

Defining Report Pages

Report pages define formatting elements common to every page of a report, such as headers, footers, titles, and column layout. Report pages also define report titles. Pages can be shared by many reports, allowing you to define a standard look for all reports generated by Vector HelpDesk.








Vector HelpDesk comes with a set of predefined pages. You can adapt these templates to your specific requirements, or define entirely new pages.

To open the Page Editor:

On the **Tools** menu, click **Report**, then click **Page Editor**.

- Choose a page from the **Name** list. You can then edit, delete, or rename the page.
- To use one page as a starting point for a new page, choose a page from the **Name** list, click **Copy**, and give the new page a name.
- To create a page from scratch, click **New**.

You can use the Page editor to define headers, footers, and titles for your reports. In addition to typing and formatting plain text, you can insert placeholders for the current date, time, and page number. When you generate your report, these placeholders are replaced with values.

To do this	Click
Insert the current date	
Insert the current time	
Insert the current page number	
Left-align text	
Center text	
Right-align text	
Format text by changing fonts and point sizes, and applying bold, italic, or underline styles.	

Related Topics

[About Reports](#)

[Defining Summary Reports](#)

[Defining Listing Reports](#)

[Defining Time Reports](#)

Chapter 7 - Managing Contacts, Users and Groups

About Users and Contacts

In Vector HelpDesk, you work with two types of users:

- Users, who have logon names and passwords and can log on to Web views, HelpDesk Web Admin, HelpDesk Admin, or the Web View Editor.
- Contacts, who cannot log on. Contacts are people who, for example, report issues by telephone, e-mail, fax, or through submit-only views.

Users are not specific to projects. For example, a user can use the same logon name and password to log on to any Web view of any project. However, each project can store different information for users. When you add a field to the **Contact** tab of a project, that field is a project-specific user information field. That is why you have to choose a project before you can create or edit users in HelpDesk Web Admin.

Importing Users and Contacts from Windows

You can import user accounts from Active Directory (or from a Windows NT domain), so users can log on to Vector HelpDesk with their Windows user names and passwords. Use the User Account Import Manager to import user accounts and keep Vector HelpDesk synchronized with Active Directory/Windows.

Administering Users and Contacts

To create and manage users and contacts in Vector HelpDesk, use HelpDesk Web Admin. For example, you can use Web Admin to disable users, create contacts, and to create user accounts.

Users with the required permissions can also create contacts in Web views.

Related Topics

[Importing User Accounts](#)

[Creating User Accounts](#)

[Disabling User Accounts](#)

[Changing Passwords and Editing User Information](#)

[Groups: Adding and Removing Users](#)

About Security

Vector HelpDesk security enables you to manage user access to issue data and features. In Vector HelpDesk, security is based on the users and groups.

When you install Vector HelpDesk, the Setup program creates sample users, such as **Admin**, and **demo**, along with a number of role-based user accounts.

To secure your projects, you must import or create user accounts for users. You then assign the users to groups, and use group privileges to control their access to tools, such as HelpDesk Admin and HelpDesk Web Admin and for individual features such as the Report editor.

Related Topics

[About Users and Contacts](#)

[About Groups](#)

[Importing User Accounts](#)

[Creating User Accounts](#)

[Defining User Groups](#)

[Groups: Adding and Removing Users](#)

[Enabling and Disabling Projects](#)

About Groups

Each user is a member of one or more groups. Access to Vector HelpDesk features and projects is based on group membership. You can enable and disable features and projects on a group-by-group basis. A user can only access a feature or project if the user is a member of a group where the feature or project is enabled.

Vector HelpDesk has several default groups.

- The **Admins** group has all features enabled
- The **Users** group enables features that you want to make available to all users. All users are members of this group
- The **Analysts** and **Group Leaders** groups have access to all Web View features controlled by security permissions
- The **Employees** group cannot access any of the Web view features controlled by security permissions

To control access to Vector HelpDesk features, you assign users to the groups based on their roles and responsibilities in the issue tracking process. For example, a help desk group leader or analyst who is also responsible for administering Vector HelpDesk must be a member of the **Admins** group. For example, a member of the QA staff who is also responsible for administering Vector HelpDesk would be a member of both the **QA** and the **Admins** group.

Notes

- Use the Web View Editor to set the [group access permissions](#) that control who can log on to the Web views of a project.
- Use HelpDesk Admin to control access to projects.

Related Topics

[About Users and Contacts](#)

[About Security](#)

[Defining User Groups](#)

[Groups: Adding and Removing Users](#)

[Enabling and Disabling Projects](#)

Importing User Accounts

You can import user accounts from an Active Directory domain or from a Windows NT domain.

To import user accounts:

- 1 Log on to the User Account Import Manager, and click **Next** in the Welcome dialog.
- 2 In the Import Rules dialog, click an import rule to specify the users you want to import.
- 3 In the Active Directory Servers and Windows Domains dialog, select an Active Directory LDAP server or a Windows NT domain.
To add an Active Directory server, click [Add LDAP](#). To add a Windows NT domain, click [Add Domain](#).
- 4 In the Active Directory Servers and Windows Domains dialog, click the Active Directory server or Windows domain from which you want to import users.
- 5 In the Import Users dialog, choose one of the following options:
 - To import all users listed in the dialog, click **Next**.
 - To filter the list based on Active Directory groups, click **Add Filter** and select the groups to filter, then click **Append** to add the group filter to the current search filter, or click **Replace** to replace the current filter with the group filter. Click **Refresh** to apply the search filter.
You can also type additional LDAP search filter conditions directly in the **Filter** box. For example, "(cn=e*)" selects all users with user names starting with "e", and "(&!cn=IUSR*) (!cn=CensusUser)" filters out all IUSR_<computername> accounts and the CensusUser account.
 - To filter the list based on Windows Domains groups, select the groups you want to import from the list.
 - To import some of the users, click **Selected Users**, then click the users you want to import.
- 6 In the Import Settings dialog, select the **Import as Contacts** check box if you want to import contacts instead of users.
- 7 To add the imported users to a specified user group, such as **Employees**, click the group to which you want to add the new users in the **Import to Group** list. (Note that imported users are always added to the **Users** group.)
- 8 To schedule imports, select the **When Scheduled** check box, then click **Configure**.

Related Topics

[Defining Import Rules](#)

[Adding Active Directory Servers and Windows Domains](#)

[Adding a Windows NT Domain](#)

[Filtering Users](#)

[Import Settings](#)

Defining Import Rules

An import rule remembers the settings from the last time you used the rule.

To define an import rule:

- 1 In the Import Rules dialog, click **Add** and type a name for the import rule.
- 2 Click **Next** and continue through the remaining steps of the User Account Import Manager.

All your subsequent choices and settings are saved in the import rule. For example, suppose you select an Active Directory server, specify an LDAP search filter, and change the default import settings. The next time you run the User Account Import Manager, you can select the import rule to use the same choices and settings.

Related Topics

[Importing User Accounts](#)

[Adding Active Directory Servers and Windows Domains](#)

[Adding a Windows NT Domain](#)

[Filtering Users](#)

[Import Settings](#)

Adding Active Directory Servers and Windows Domains

Before you can import user accounts, you must add a connection to an Active Directory server or Windows NT domain.

To add an Active Directory server:

- 1 In the Active Directory Servers and Windows Domains dialog, click **Manage**.
- 2 In the Manage Active Directory Servers and Windows Domains dialog, click **Add LDAP**.
- 3 In the **Display Name** box, type a name for the LDAP server. Vector HelpDesk uses this name to identify the server.
- 4 In the **Host**, **Port**, and **Base DN** boxes, enter the connection information for the LDAP server:
 - Host** is the IP address of the LDAP server.
 - Port** is the port the LDAP server is running on. By default, LDAP servers run on port 389. LDAP over SSL uses port 636 by default.
 - Base DN** is the top level of the LDAP directory tree. For example, if your organization's DNS domain name is *mycompany.local*, the Base DN is *dc=mycompany,dc=local*.
- 5 If you want to use anonymous authentication for the connection, select the **Anonymous Bind** check box.
Alternatively, clear the **Anonymous Bind** check box and enter the information for authenticating a user when connected to the server, where:
 - User DN** is the user to authenticate For example: *CN=Administrator,CN=Users,DC=mycompany,DC=local*
 - Password** is the user's password
- 6 In the **LDAP Logon Name Field** box, type the name of the LDAP property that stores the user account name. Vector HelpDesk uses this name to log on.
- 7 Click **Test** to test the connection.

Related Topics

[Importing User Accounts](#)

[Defining Import Rules](#)

[Adding a Windows NT Domain](#)

[Filtering Users](#)

[Import Settings](#)

Adding a Windows NT Domain

To add a Windows NT domain:

- 1 In the Active Directory Servers and Windows Domains dialog, click **Manage**.
- 2 In the Active Directory Servers and Windows Domains dialog, click **Add Domain**.
- 3 In the **Domain** list, click the Windows NT domain you want to add.
- 4 If the **Computer Name** box is not automatically filled in, type the name of the server that is the primary domain controller, in the format "\\server".
- 5 Click **Test** to test the connection.

Related Topics

[Importing User Accounts](#)

[Defining Import Rules](#)

[Adding Active Directory Servers and Windows Domains](#)

[Filtering Users](#)

[Import Settings](#)

Filtering Users

You can use LDAP search filters to filter the list of users imported from Active Directory.

If you want to filter users based on Active Directory groups, click **Add Filter** and select the groups you want to filter. Then click **Append** to append the group filter to the search filter in the **Filter** box, or click **Replace** to replace any existing search filter.

If you want to filter on other conditions, you can also write your own LDAP search filters, and combine them with the group filters created with **Add Filter**. For example, you could type in filters such as:

- (sn=Mark)
selects users with a surname of Mark.
- (!cn=IUSR_*)
filters out all user names that start with IUSR_*.
- (&(!cn=IUSR_*) (!cn=IWAM_*))
filters out all IUSR_<computername> and IWAM_<computername> users.

For more information on the LDAP search filter syntax, see:

http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/default.asp?url=/library/en-us/adsisearchfilter_syntax.asp.

Related Topics

[Importing User Accounts](#)

[Defining Import Rules](#)

[Adding Active Directory Servers and Windows Domains](#)

[Adding a Windows NT Domain](#)

[Import Settings](#)

Import Settings

Import as Contacts

If you want to import the users as contacts, select the **Import as Contacts** check box.

Import to Groups

By default, imported users are added the Users group in Vector HelpDesk. If you want to add the imported users to a different group (for example, Admins), click the group in the Import to Groups list.

Get E-mail Addresses From

Specifies where to get the e-mail addresses of imported users.

Scheduling Imports

Specifies when to import users. Select the **When Scheduled** check box and then click **Configure** if you want to use Window's Scheduled Tasks to schedule regular imports. Scheduling imports keeps Vector HelpDesk synchronized with Active Directory and Windows domains.

Select the **Now** check box if you want to import users as soon as you finish with the User Account Import Manager.

Import Settings

These check boxes control whether the Vector HelpDesk User Account Manager:

- Adds new user accounts for any new users found in the Active Directory or Windows domain.
- Updates existing user accounts with any changes (for example, to the user name or e-mail address) found the Active Directory or Windows domain.

Related Topics

[Importing User Accounts](#)

[Defining Import Rules](#)

[Adding Active Directory Servers and Windows Domains](#)



[Adding a Windows NT Domain](#)

[Filtering Users](#)

Creating User Accounts

You create Vector HelpDesk user accounts with HelpDesk Web Admin. New users automatically belong to the Users group. To add a user to other groups, use HelpDesk Web Admin.

To create a user account:

- 1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Security** tab.
Alternatively, in HelpDesk Admin, click **Tools > Security > Users**.
- 2 In the **Project** list, click a project.
Users are not specific to a project, but each project can have its own user information fields. For example, one project may have a **Department** field while other projects do not.
- 3 In the **Display** list, click **Users** and choose the users you want to work with:
 - To display all users, click **All Users** and select **Show All** to list all users.
 - To display all contacts, click **All Contacts** and select **Show All** to list all users.
 - To display all users and contacts whose names start with the same letters, click **Names starting with**, type the first few letters of the name in the entry field, and click Refresh .
 - To display all users and contacts whose names contain the same string, click **Names containing** and then type the string.
- 4 Click **Add User** .
- 5 In the **Authenticate With** list, click **HelpDesk** to authenticate against the Vector HelpDesk user database.
- 6 In the **Logon Name** box, type the user name.
- 7 In the **Password** and **Confirm Password** boxes, type the user's password.
- 8 Enter the rest of the user information and click **Apply**.
- 9 If you want to control the projects in which the user is visible, use the **Category** list to assign the user to a category (for example, Internal Development or External Development).
Different projects can be configured to display different categories of users and contacts.

Related Topics

[Importing User Accounts](#)

[Setting Default Values for New Users](#)

[Using Categories to Hide Users in Projects](#)

[Groups: Adding and Removing Users](#)

[Users: Changing Group Membership](#)

[Assigning Users to Work Teams](#)

[Reserving Licenses](#)

Setting Default Values for New Users

To save time when creating user accounts, you can use an existing user account as a template for new accounts. All the user information entered in the existing account (except for the password, user name, and logon name) are used as the default values for new accounts.


To set the default values for new user accounts:

- 1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Security** tab.

Alternatively, in HelpDesk Admin, click **Tools > Security > Users**.

- 2 In the **Project** list, click a project.

- 3 In the **Display** list, click **Users**.

- 4 Click a user and then click **Make Default**  .

You can also set default values for contacts by clicking a contact in the list and then clicking  .

Related Topics

[Importing User Accounts](#)

[Defining Import Rules](#)

[Adding Active Directory Servers and Windows Domains](#)

[Adding a Windows NT Domain](#)

[Filtering Users](#)

About Work Teams

You can use Vector HelpDesk to help manage and coordinate work teams. Setting up work team support involves the following tasks:

- Building a list of work teams. Vector HelpDesk includes a global choice list named Work Team.
- Assigning users to work teams.
- Adding the Assigned Work Team field to Web views. This field is used to assign issues to specific work teams, either manually by users or automatically by workflow rules.
- Define queries for finding work team issues. Vector HelpDesk includes a **My Work Team's Issues** query that gets all the issues assigned to a user's work team, but you may want to define additional queries for work teams (for example, a query that finds all open issues assigned to the user's work team).

Related Topics

[Defining Work Teams](#)

[Assigning Users to Work Teams](#)

[Adding Work Team Support to Web Views](#)




[Building Work Team Queries](#)

Defining Work Teams

The list of available work teams is stored in a global choice list named Work Team. The HelpDesk project has an **Assigned Work Team** field that uses this global choice list.

You use HelpDesk Web Admin to edit the list of work teams.

To edit the list of work teams:

- 1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Choices** tab.
- 2 In the **Project** list, click < **Global Choice Lists** >.
- 3 In the **Choice List** list, click **Work Team**.
- 4 In the **Choices** section:
 - To rename a work team, click the work team and then click .
 - To add a new work team, click  and then type the name of the work team.
 - To delete a work team, click the work team and then click .

Related Topics

[About Work Teams](#)

[Assigning Users to Work Teams](#)

[Adding Work Team Support to Web Views](#)

[Building Work Team Queries](#)

Assigning Users to Work Teams

You can assign both users and contacts to work teams. No user or contact can belong to more than one work team.

To assign a user or contact to a work team:


- 1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Security** tab.

Alternatively, in HelpDesk Admin, click **Tools > Security > Users**.

- 2 In the **Project** list, click a project.

- 3 In the **Display** list:

- To display all users, click **All Users**.
- To display all contacts, click **All Contacts**.
- To display all users and contacts whose names start with the same letters, click **Names starting with** and then type the first few letters of the name.
- To display all users and contacts whose names contain the same string, click **Names containing** and then type the string.

- 4 In the list of users, click a user (or contact) and then click **Edit** .

- 5 In the **Work Team** list, click the work team to which the user belongs.

Related Topics

[About Work Teams](#)

[Defining Work Teams](#)

[Adding Work Team Support to Web Views](#)

[Building Work Team Queries](#)

Adding Work Team Support to Web Views

To allow users and workflow rules to assign issues to work teams, [export](#) the **Assigned Work Team** field (**Overview** tab) to the Web views.

Related Topics

[About Work Teams](#)

[Defining Work Teams](#)

[Assigning Users to Work Teams](#)

[Building Work Team Queries](#)

Building Work Team Queries

You can query for issues assigned to a specific work team, for example, all issues assigned to the QA Team:

```
Assigned Work Team = QA Team
```

You can also use the **<My Work Team>** macro to query for issues assigned to the work team of the current user. For example, this query finds all open issues assigned to the user's work team:

```
Assigned Work Team = <My Work Team> AND  
State = Open
```

Related Topics

[About Work Teams](#)

[Defining Work Teams](#)

[Assigning Users to Work Teams](#)




[Adding Work Team Support to Web Views](#)

Defining User Categories

You can control which users and contacts are visible in a project. Each user (and each contact) can be assigned to a user category. For example, some users can be assigned to the Internal Development category, and others to the External Development category.

The list of available user categories is a global choice list, so you can use HelpDesk Web Admin to build the list of user categories you want to use.

To edit the list of user categories:

- 1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Choices** tab.
- 2 In the Project list, click < **Global Choice Lists** >.
- 3 In the **Choice List** list, click **User Category**.
- 4 In the **Choices** section:
 - To add a new user category, click  and then type the category name.
 - To rename a user category, click the category and then click .
 - To delete a user category, click the category and then click .

Related Topics


[Assigning Users to Categories](#)

[Hiding Users in Projects](#)

Assigning Users to Categories

Assigning users and contacts to categories allows you to control which users and contacts are visible in a project.

To assign users and contacts to categories:

- 1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Security** tab.
If you are in HelpDesk Admin, click **Tools > Security > Users**.
- 2 In the **Project** list, click a project.
- 3 In the **Display** list:
 - To display all users, click **All Users**.
 - To display all contacts, click **All Contacts**.
 - To display all users and contacts whose names start with the same letters, click **Names starting with** and type the first few letters of the name.
 - To display all users and contacts whose names contain the same string, click **Names containing** and type the string.
- 4 In the list of users, click a user or contact and then click **Edit** .
- 5 In the **User Category** list, click the category to which the user belongs.


Related Topics

[Defining User Categories](#)

[Hiding Users in Projects](#)

Hiding Users in Projects

To control which users and contacts are visible in a project:

- 1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Security** tab.
- 2 In the **Project** list, click a project.
- 3 Click .
- 4 In the **Advanced** dialog, select the **In this project, ...** check box, then select the categories of users and contacts you want to be visible in the project.

Related Topics

[Defining User Categories](#)

[Assigning Users to Categories](#)

Disabling User Accounts

Users are not deleted, only disabled.

Disabled accounts cannot be used to log on, but the names still appear in the **Owner** and **Contact** lists because existing issues may still refer to the users.

Disabling a contact has no effect.

To disable a user account:

- 1** In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Security** tab.
If you are in HelpDesk Admin, click **Tools > Security > Users**.
- 2** In the **Project** list, click a project.
- 3** In the **Display** list, click **Users**.
- 4** Select the **Disabled** check box beside the name of the user you want to disable.

Related Topics

[About Users and Contacts](#)

[Creating User Accounts](#)

[Changing Passwords and Editing User Information](#)

Editing User Information

You can edit user information for both users and contacts with HelpDesk Web Admin.

To edit user information:

- 1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Security** tab.

If you are in HelpDesk Admin, click **Tools > Security > Users**.


- 2 In the **Project** list, click a project.

Users are not specific to a project, but each project can have its own user information fields. For example, one project may have a **Department** field while other projects do not.

- 3 In the **Display** list, click **Users** or **Contacts**.

To quickly find a user: in the **Display** list, click **Names** starting with, then type the first few letters of the user's name. Alternatively, click **Names containing**, then type a few letters from anywhere in the user's name.

To display all users, click **All Users**.

- 4 In the list of users, click the user, then click **Edit** .

Related Topics

[Changing Passwords](#)

[Changing the Authentication Method](#)

[Groups: Adding and Removing Users](#)

[Changing Group Membership](#)

[Reserving Licenses](#)


Changing Passwords

You can change passwords for Vector HelpDesk user accounts. You cannot change passwords for user accounts imported from Active Directory or Windows.

To change a user's password:

- 1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Security** tab.

Alternatively, in HelpDesk Admin, click **Tools > Security > Users**.

- 2 In the list of users, click the user and then click **Edit Logon**  .

To quickly find a user, click **Users starting with** in the **Display** list, then type the first few letters of the user's name.

- 3 In the **Change Logon Information** dialog, type a new password.

Related Topics

[Editing User Information](#)

Changing the Authentication Method

- 1 In the **Authenticate With** list:
 - Click **HelpDesk** to authenticate against the Vector HelpDesk user database.
 - Click an Active Directory server to authenticate against Active Directory.
 - Click a Windows server to authenticate against a Windows domain.
- 2 If you authenticate with HelpDesk, you may need to enter the logon name and password.

Related Topics

[About Users and Contacts](#)

[Creating User Accounts](#)

[Disabling User Accounts](#)

Defining User Groups


Groups allow you to assign privileges to users. By enabling and disabling features for a group, you control the features (privileges) available to the members of that group.

Group membership determines which features are available to a user. Each group enables and disables different features. Users that belong to more than one group have access to any feature enabled in at least one of the groups.


Group membership also controls access to projects and Web views. To assign users to groups, use HelpDesk Admin .

In the **Users** view of the **Security** tab, you can select a user and then edit the list of groups to which the user belongs. In the **Groups** view, you can select a group and edit the list of users that belong to the group.

To add a group:

- 1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Security** tab.
If you are in HelpDesk Admin, click **Tools > Security > Groups**.
- 2 On the **Security** tab, click the large **Groups** button on the left side of the tab.
- 3 Click **Add**  and type a new for the group.

To delete a group:

- 1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Security** tab.
If you are in HelpDesk Admin, click **Tools > Security > Groups**.
- 2 On the **Security** tab, click the large **Groups** button on the left side of the tab.
- 3 In the **Groups** list, click the group you want to delete.
- 4 Click **Delete** .

Related Topics

[About Users and Contacts](#)

[About Security](#)

[About Groups](#)

[Groups: Adding and Removing Users](#)

[Users: Changing Group Membership](#)

[Enabling and Disabling Projects](#)

Groups: Adding and Removing Users

On the **Security** tab, the **Groups** view allows you to add or remove multiple users at the same time.

To add users to a group:

- 1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Security** tab.

If you are in HelpDesk Admin, click **Tools > Security > Groups**.

- 2 On the **Security** tab, click the large **Groups** button on the left side of the tab.

- 3 In the **Groups** list, click a group.

- 4 Click **Users** 

- 5 To add users:

- a In the **Non-Members** list, click the users you want to add to the group. Use the Shift and Control keys to select more than one user.

- b Click .

- 6 To remove users:

- c In the **Members** list, click the users you want to remove from the group. Use the Shift and Control keys to select more than one user.

- d Click .

Related Topics

[About Users and Contacts](#)

[About Security](#)

[About Groups](#)

[Defining User Groups](#)

[Enabling and Disabling Projects](#)


Users: Changing Group Membership


To add a user to a group (in the Users view):

- 1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Security** tab. By default, the tab shows the **Users** view.
- 2 In the **Project** list, click a project.
- 3 In the **Display** list, click **Users**.

To quickly find a user click **Names starting with** in the **Display** list, then type the first few letters of the user's name. Alternatively, click **Names containing**, then type a few letters from anywhere in the user's name.

To display all users, click **All Users**.

- 4 In the list of users, click the user and then click **Groups** .
- 5 In the Select Groups dialog, select the check boxes for the groups to which you want to add the user.

To filter the list of groups, click **Advanced**  and type part of a group name. Click **Filter** to list only the groups that contain the text you typed.

To find all groups with names that start with a certain string of characters, click **Options** and in the **Search Type** list, click **Starting With**.

Related Topics

[About Users and Contacts](#)

[About Security](#)

[About Groups](#)

[Defining User Groups](#)

[Groups: Adding and Removing Users](#)

[Enabling and Disabling Projects](#)

Reserving Licenses

Vector HelpDesk offers the ability to assign licenses to specific users. This way, the latter will always have access to Web views regardless of the number of users currently accessing the system.

For example, if you have 10 licenses, and you wish to reserve 1 for a specific user (For example, 'Employee'), this means you will only have 9 licenses left for other users to use. When 'Employee' logs in, HelpDesk will automatically use his reserved license. If 'Employee' logs in a second time, while still using his reserved license, HelpDesk will use one of the unreserved (floating) licenses.

To assign reserved licenses to a user, set a value for the *Number of Reserved Licenses* field. This is done via the Users and Contacts editor, as described in [Editing User Information](#).

For information on how concurrent licenses are handled, see [Types of Web Views](#).

To view how the licenses are distributed, or whether or not they are in use, do the following:

- 1 Open HelpDesk Admin by clicking **Start > All Programs > Vector > HelpDesk > HelpDesk Admin**.
- 2 Log in as a HelpDesk administrator.
- 3 Click **Tools** from the menu bar, and then click **Licenses**.
- 4 Note the **License Details** and **License Usage Summary** sections.

Related Topics

[About Users and Contacts](#)

[Creating User Accounts](#)


[Changing Passwords and Editing User Information](#)

[Types of Web Views](#)

Companies

Vector HelpDesk maintains a list of companies. By assigning users to companies, you can create a service level agreement that applies to all users at a specific company.






To create a company:

- 1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Security** tab. By default, the Security tab shows the **Users** view.
- 2 In the **Project** list, click a project.
- 3 In the **Display** list, click **All Companies**.
- 4 Click **Add Company** .
- 5 Fill in the company information and click **Apply**.

Departments

By assigning users to departments, you can create a service level agreement that applies to all users in a specific department.

To edit the list of departments:

- 1** In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Choices** tab.
- 2** In the **Project** list, click a project.
Each project has its own list of departments.
- 3** In the **Choice List** list, click **Department**.
- 4** Edit the departments:
 - Click  to create a new department.
 - To delete a department, click the service type and then click .
 - To rename a department, click the service type and then click .
 - To reorder the list, click a department and then use  and  to move

About Features

Vector HelpDesk includes UI features that can be enabled and disabled. Most features correspond directly to menu commands, such as **Security** or **Report Editor**. When a user does not have permission to use a feature, the feature is not displayed in the user interface.

To enable or disable a feature for a group:

- 1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Security** tab.

If you are in HelpDesk Admin, click **Tools > Security > Groups**.

- 2 On the **Security** tab, click the large **Groups** button on the left of the tab.
- 3 In the **Groups** list, click a group.

- 4 Click **Features** .

- 5 To enable a feature:

- a In the **Disabled** list, click the feature you want to disable. Use the Shift and Control keys to select more than one feature.

- b Click .

- 6 To disable a feature:

- c In the **Enabled** list, click the features you want to disable. Use the Shift and Control keys to select more than one feature.

- d Click .

Related Topics

[Web View Features](#)

[HelpDesk Web Admin Features](#)

[HelpDesk Admin Features](#)

[Web View Editor Features](#)

[Enabling and Disabling Projects](#)

Web View Features

Feature	Permits the user to
Ad hoc Queries	Access the Ad-hoc Query Editor
Add Contact Editor	Open the Users and Contacts dialog in a Web view by clicking the Contacts button
Add Contact	Create contacts
Add & Save Issues	Create new issues and save them
Copy & Save Issues	Create a new issue based on the current one in the Web view and save it
Delete Contact	Disable contacts
Update Contact	Edit contacts
Default Value Editor	Set default values for new issues
Email Conversation	View and manage the e-mails linked to the current issue in the Web view
E-mail Current Issue	Send an e-mail with a summary of the current issue from the Web views
Email Queue	View and manage the e-mails that are not linked to issues
Manage E-mail Templates	Create, update and delete e-mail templates that are used when composing new e-mails or in automated e-mail responses
My Queries	Run personal queries only available to the user from the Web views
Password Editor	Change password
Queries - View Source	View the SQL WHERE clause behind the named query
Report Viewer	View Vector HelpDesk reports
Report Viewer - Hardware Inventory	View Hardware Inventory reports
Report Viewer - Software Inventory	View Software Inventory reports
Revision History	View the change history for an issue
Save & Remove User Queries	Create new personal queries and be able to delete them
Save Issues	Update and save issues from the Web views
Update Submit Only View Contact	Update the contact information from a Submit-Only View
Use E-mail Templates	Apply saved e-mail templates when composing new e-mails

Example

The staff responsible for logging issues received from customers need to be able to add new contacts (each customer is a contact). To allow users to add new contacts in Web views, enable these features:

- Add Contact Editor
- Add Contact

Related Topics

[Disabling Features](#)

[HelpDesk Web Admin Features](#)

[HelpDesk Admin Features](#)

[Web View Editor Features](#)

[Enabling and Disabling Projects](#)

HelpDesk Web Admin Features

The following features enable and disable the different tabs in HelpDesk Web Admin.

Feature	Permits the user to
Web Admin - Choices	Create and edit choices lists
Web Admin - Email Integration	Manage and configure integrations of HelpDesk and e-mail accounts for submitting issues by e-mail, linking e-mails to issues, automatic status by e-mail and more
Web Admin - Inventory Editor	Connect projects to Vector Asset Management or PC-Duo Enterprise site databases for linking computers and other assets to the issues as well as viewing hardware and software reports
Web Admin - Notifications	Set the user account used for notifications
Web Admin - Relocation	Relocate databases and attachments
Web Admin - Security	Edit users, contacts, and groups. Add, edit, and delete groups. Enable and disable features for groups
Web Admin - SLA - Manage Agreements & Levels	Manage Service Level Agreements and Service Levels, including working hours, target times and escalation rules
SLA - Report Viewer	View reports with summary and metrics of Service Level Agreements performance
SLA - View	View only the Service Level Agreement Information
Web Admin - Tabs	Create new tabs
Web Admin - Users - Add	Create new users
Web Admin - Users - Disable	Disable users therefore preventing them from logging into the system
Web Admin - Users - Update	Update user information such as e-mail address, postal address and telephone
Web Admin - Users - View	View only users and user information
Web Admin - Workflow	Edit workflow rules

When **Web Admin - Security** is enabled, you can selectively enable features for editing user accounts.

Feature	Permits the user to
View User Editor	View user information (such as the logon name, full name, and password) in the Users and Contacts window
Add Users	Add users
Delete Users	Disable users
Update Users	Edit user information

When **Web Admin - Security** is enabled, you can selectively enable features for editing contact information.

Feature	Permits the user to
Add Contact Editor	View contact information (such as the full name and e-mail address) in the Users and Contacts window
Add Contact	Create contacts
Delete Contact	Disable contacts
Update Contact	Edit contact information

Related Topics[Disabling Features](#)[Web View Features](#)[HelpDesk Admin Features](#)[Web View Editor Features](#)[Enabling and Disabling Projects](#)

Admin Features

To enable Admin features, you must enable Admin Utility. Otherwise, users cannot log on.

Feature	Permits the user to
Admin Utility	Log on to HelpDesk Admin
Delete Project	Delete a project
Delete Issues	Delete issues from a project
Import Issues	Import issues into a project
Integrity Editor	Open the Integrity Editor
Layout Editor	Open the Layout Editor and define custom layout styles for the Summary List
Licenses	Open the Licenses dialog
Logons Editor	Log off users
New Project	Create a new project
Notification Editor	Set up automatic e-mail notifications
Password Editor	Change password, in Web views and in HelpDesk Admin
Page Editor	Create and edit report pages
Project Properties	Edit project properties, such as which groups are allowed to open a project
Query Editor	Open the Query Editor and define custom queries
Repair and Compact	Repair and compact a project database
Report Editor	Define new reports, and edit existing reports
Sort Editor	Open the Sort Editor and define custom sorts
Field Editor	Add new fields, change labels and modify the values that appear in choice lists
Upgrade Editor	Upgrade HelpDesk Server files
Web Tools Menu	Start the Web View Editor and HelpDesk Web Admin from the Tools > Web menu
When Editor	Edit the when conditions for notifications
Windows Account Editor	Edit the Windows user account used for anonymous access to virtual directories and for running the notification service.

Example

To allow users to create new reports, enable, at a minimum, the Admin Utility and Report editor features. This allows users to log on to HelpDesk Admin and create new reports using existing queries, sorts, and report pages. The new reports are automatically made available in existing Web views.

Enabling the Query editor, Sort editor, and Page editor features allows users to create new queries, sorts, and report pages and use them in report definitions. New queries aren't available in Web views unless you export the queries and regenerate the views. All new sorts, however, are automatically made available in Web views.

Related Topics

[Disabling Features](#)

[Web View Features](#)

[HelpDesk Web Admin Features](#)

[Web View Editor Features](#)

[Enabling and Disabling Projects](#)

[Generating Web Views](#)

Web View Editor Features

You can prevent users from logging on to the Web View editor by disabling the Web View Editor feature.

Related Topics

[Disabling Features](#)

[Web View Features](#)

[Web Admin Features](#)

[Admin Features](#)

[Enabling and Disabling Projects](#)




Enabling and Disabling Projects

When you disable a project for a group, members of that group cannot:

- Log on to Web views of the project.
- Edit the project in HelpDesk Admin.
- Edit views of that project in Web View editor, or generate new views of that project.

You can [disable specific Web views](#) for members of a group.

To enable or disable a project for a group:

- 1** In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Security** tab, then click the large **Groups** button on the left of the tab.
- 2** In the **Groups** list, click a group.
- 3** Click **Projects** 
- 4** If you want to enable a project:
 - a** In the **Disabled** list, click the projects you want to enable. Use the Shift and Control keys to select more than one project.
 - b** Click .
- 5** If you want to disable a project:
 - c** In the **Enabled** list, click the projects you want to disable. Use the Shift and Control keys to select more than one project.
 - d** Click .

You can also enable or disable projects from the **Groups Allowed to Open** list in the Project Properties dialog.

Related Topics

[Disabling Features](#)

[Web View Features](#)

[Web Admin Features](#)

[Admin Features](#)

[Web View Editor Features](#)

Chapter 8 - E-mail Integration

Setting Up E-mail Integration

In addition to enabling users to submit issues through Web views, you can configure HelpDesk to directly accept issues submitted by e-mail, as well as keep track of all e-mail conversations associated to the issue. This provides an easy-to-use interface with which most users are already familiar, and enables support staff to manage e-mail exchanges with users without having to spend time entering the details of conversations.

To configure your system to accept e-mail issues:

Open Web Admin using one of the following methods:

In your Web browser, enter `//server/helpdeskadmin`, where *server* is the name of your Web server.

In HelpDesk Admin, click Tools > Web > Web Admin.

At the Web server, click Start > All Programs > Vector > HelpDesk > HelpDesk Web Admin.

Log on as a user that belongs to the **HelpDesk Administrators** group.

In Web Admin, click the **E-mail** tab and click **Incoming Mail**.

Select the **Project** for which you want to enable e-mail integration.

The E-mail Integration Process

Configuring HelpDesk to accept issues submitted by e-mail is a multi-stage process:

Click **Add a new Integration** to enter the details of an e-mail address you want to use to submit issues to the project and keep the e-mail exchanges. The **Add E-mail Integration Account** window is displayed.

For each e-mail address, you want HelpDesk to monitor, you must specify:

The information that will enable HelpDesk to access the account. (See "Specifying the E-mail Integration Account".)

The rules that govern how incoming e-mails are handled. (See "Mail Handling".)

The information you want to copy from the e-mail to the associated issue, and default values for non-mapped fields. (See "Mapping E-mail Fields to Issue Fields".)

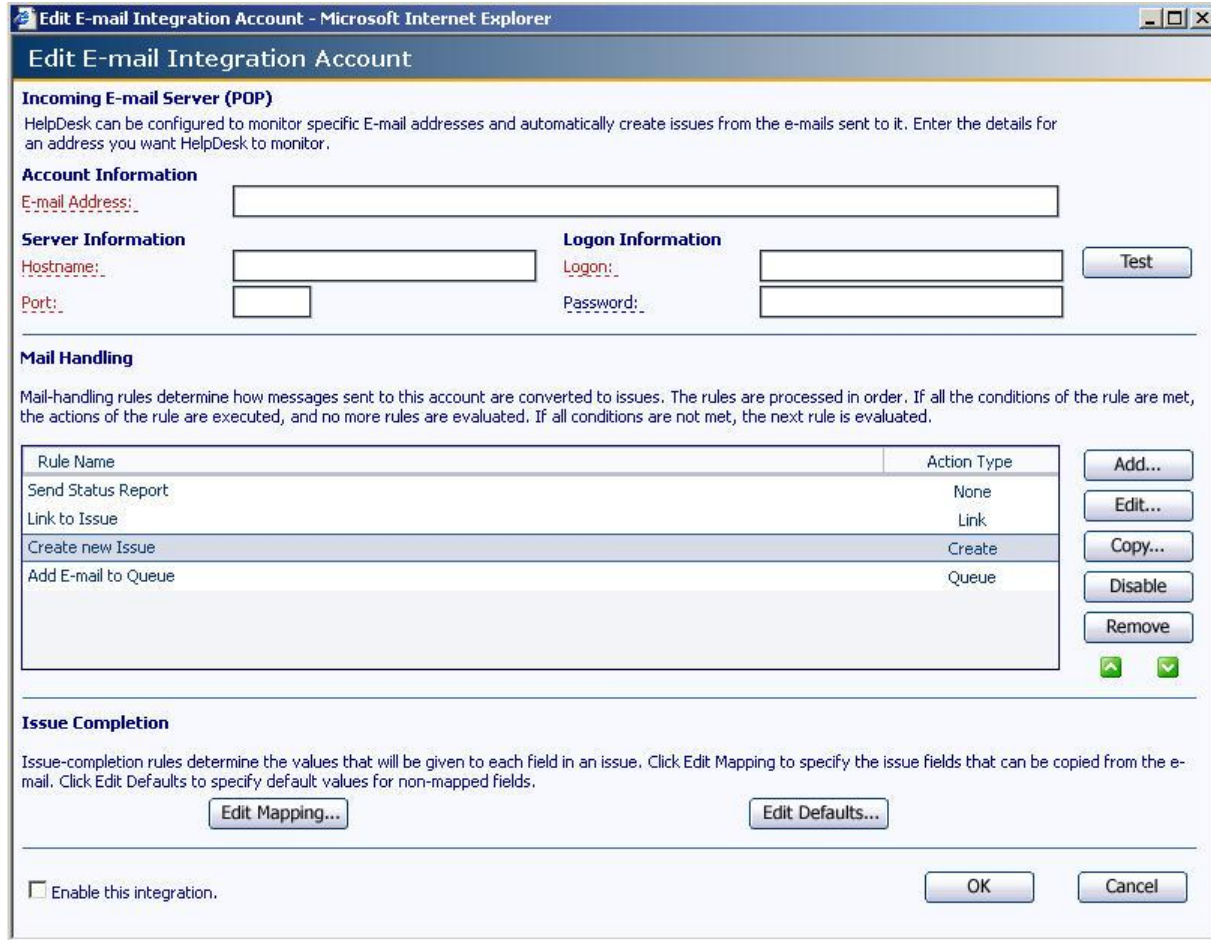
When you have completed entering the details of the **E-mail Integration Account**, select **Enable this integration**, and click **OK** to save your changes.

Specifying the E-mail Integration Account

Before HelpDesk can convert e-mails to issues, you must specify the addresses that you want to use for submitting issues.

To specify the details of the e-mail account you want to integrate with HelpDesk:

- 1 In the **Hostname** field, enter the name or IP address of the POP e-mail server that handles incoming e-mail.
- 2 In the **Port** field, enter the port through which the e-mail server communicates. By default, POP uses port 110.
- 3 Enter a **Logon** and a **Password** for the account that HelpDesk will use to access the e-mail server.

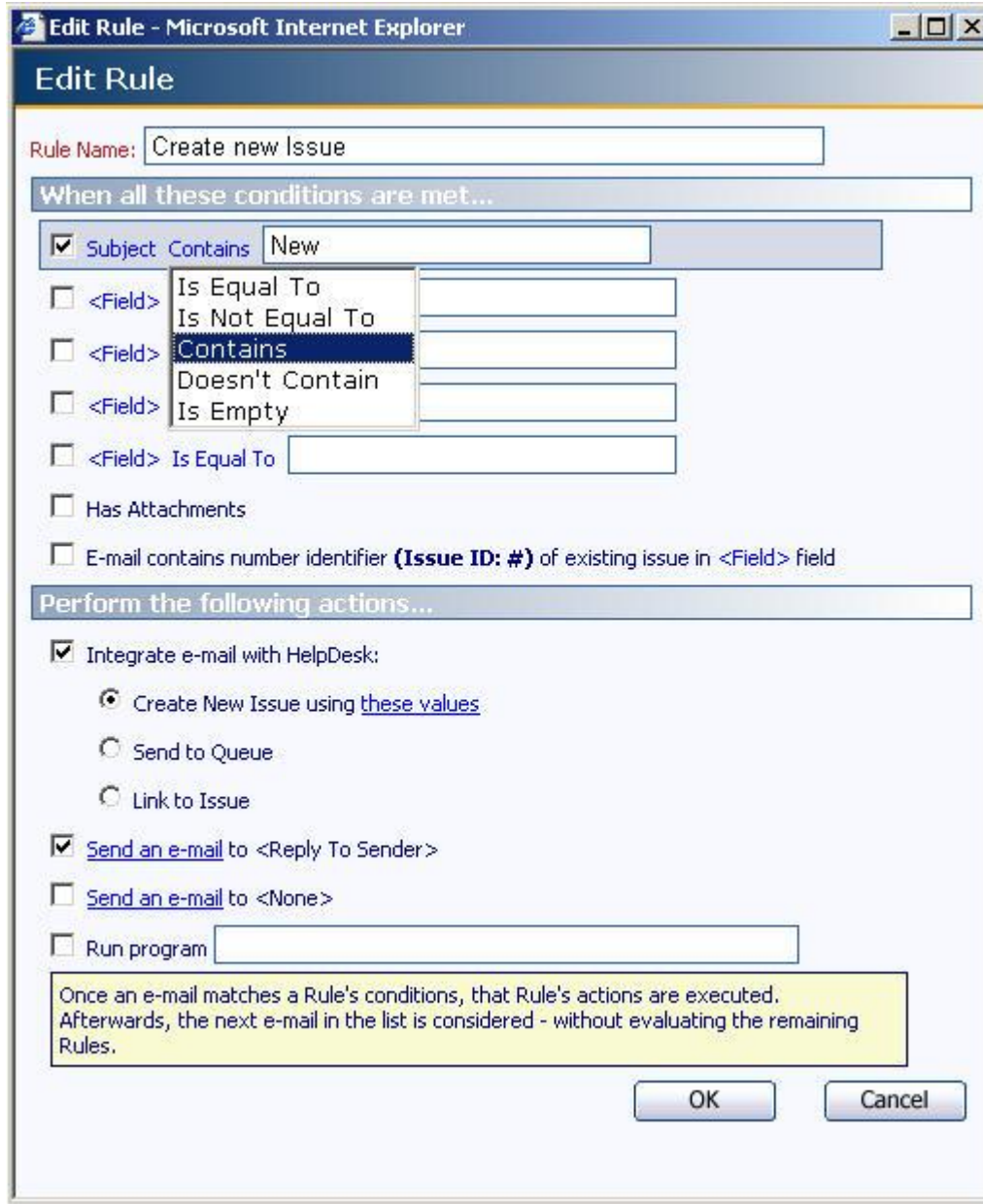


Mail Handling

Mail-handling rules determine how e-mails sent to the address specified in the **Incoming E-mail Server** section are processed.

When an e-mail is received, HelpDesk compares the e-mail fields with the conditions specified in the first entry of the rules list. If the e-mail matches all conditions specified in the rule, HelpDesk executes the specified actions, and then processes the next e-mail. If any of the conditions in the rule are not met, HelpDesk tests the e-mail against the conditions specified in the next rule, until it reaches the end of the rule list.

It is recommended to place a rule that has an **Action Type** of **Queue** as the last rule in the list to cover the possibility that the e-mail does not meet the conditions of any rule in the list, in which case, the e-mail will be automatically added to the **E-mail Queue** for manual processing.



To create an e-mail rule:

In the **Mail Handling** section, click the **Add** button. The **Add Rule** window is displayed.

Enter a **Rule Name**.

Enter the conditions you want the rule to test for. For example, to test the *Body* of the e-mail for the word *problem*:

- 1 Enable the first empty condition by selecting its check box.
- 2 Click **<Field>** and select **Body**.
- 3 Click **Is Equal to** and select **Contains**.
- 4 Type *problem* in the entry field.
- 5 Next, enter the actions you want the system to perform when all the conditions are met.

For example, to configure the system to create an issue and send a reply to the person who sent the e-mail:

- a Select the Integrate e-mail with HelpDesk check box.
- b Select Create New Issue using these values.

*By default, HelpDesk completes the issue using the field mappings defined in the **Issue Completion** section of the **Edit E-mail Integration Account** window. To override these mappings for this rule only, click **these values**. For more information, see "Mapping E-mail Fields to Issue Fields".*

- c Select **Send an e-mail to <Reply to Sender>** to send an acknowledgement to the submitter. (For more information, see "Defining E-mails").
- 6 Click **OK** to save the rule. The rule is added to the bottom of the mail-handling list.
 - 7 Select the rule and click the **Up** and **Down** arrows to specify the processing order for the rule.

In most systems, the first rule checks whether an e-mail refers to an existing issue to avoid the possibility of creating duplicate issues. The easiest way to create this rule is to specify a condition that checks whether the e-mail contains a reference to an existing issue. If there is no match, only then should the system go on to check whether the e-mail contains details of a new issue.

Mail Settings

In order for the HelpDesk E-mail Integration to process incoming and outgoing e-mails, several Mail Settings must be configured in HelpDesk.

To configure the Mail Settings:

Log on to HelpDesk Web Admin. Click the **E-mail** tab and the **Mail Settings** section.

Fill in the Outgoing E-mail Settings. These settings are used when sending e-mails.

Click **Test** to ensure HelpDesk is able to connect to the SMTP server using the settings you provided.

Option	Description
Hostname	The hostname or IP address of the SMTP server. For example: smtp.mycompany.com
Port	The port through which the SMTP server communicates. The default SMTP server port is 25.

Logon	The logon account used to gain access to the SMTP server. Use this only if your SMTP server requires authentication.
Password	The password for logging into the SMTP server. Use this only if your SMTP server requires authentication.
Request Read Receipt	Read receipts will appear in the conversation, confirming that the recipient has read the message. Note, however, that some recipients may choose to never send read receipts.
Send Automatic E-mail Notifications From	Name of the sender for SMTP e-mail. Some SMTP mail servers require the sender to be a valid e-mail address. Supported Formats: "Notification Service" <notificationsservice@yourcompany.com> notificationsservice@yourcompany.com
Send Automatic E-mail Notifications Every	Send e-mail notifications at the specified interval (in minutes).
Maximum Retries	The maximum number of retries for e-mail notifications. Once surpassed, the e-mail will be sent to the address specified in the Send Failed Outgoing E-mails To.
Send Failed Outgoing E-mails To	If the Maximum Retries is surpassed, the e-mail will be sent to this address. If there is no address specified, the e-mail service will continue trying to send to the original recipient.

Fill in the **Incoming E-mail Settings**. These settings are used when receiving e-mails, together with the **Account, Server** and **Logon Information** specified in the defined Mail Integrations. [Link here to Mail Integration content]

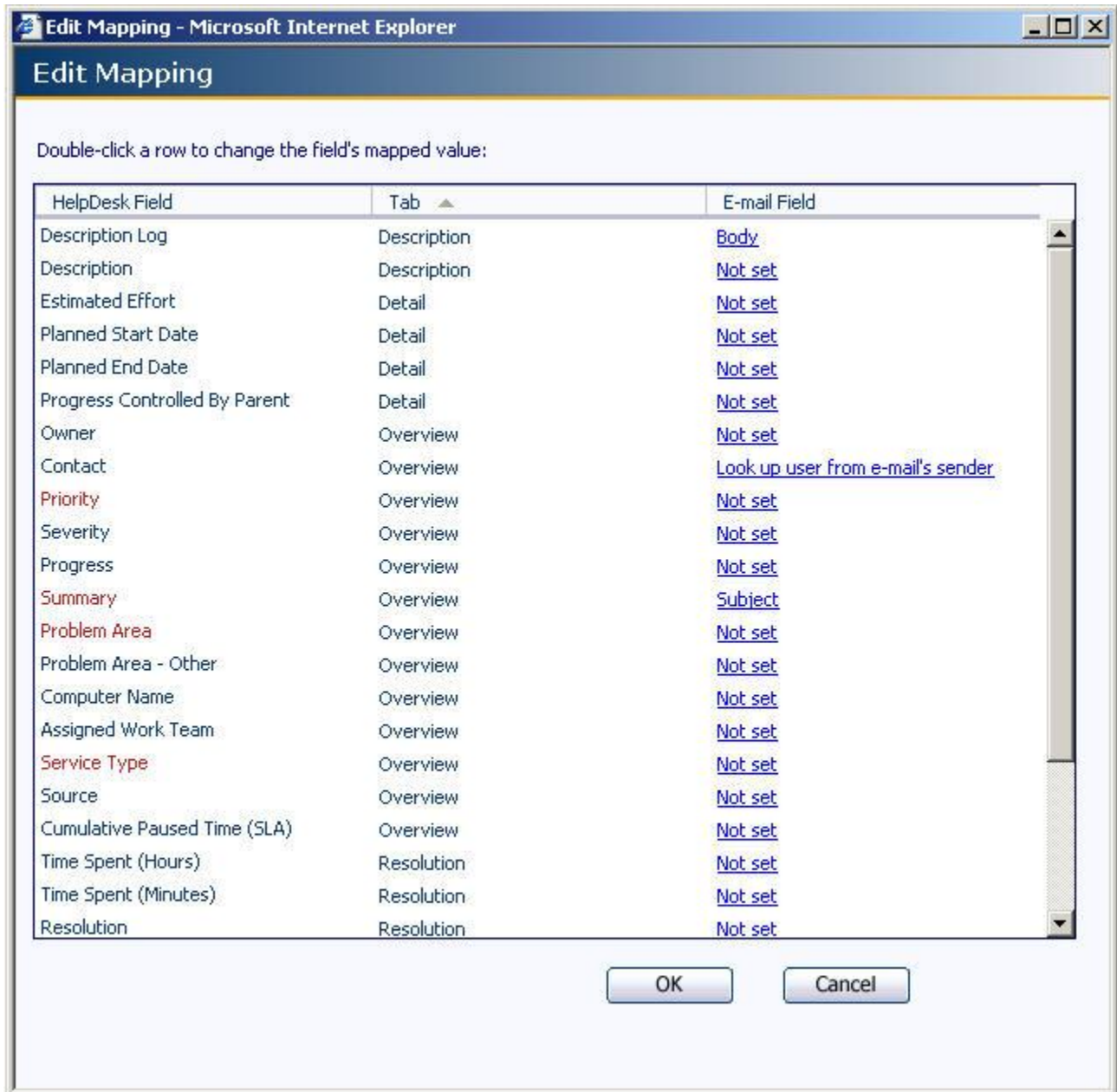
Option	Description
Check Server For New Mail Every	Check for new incoming e-mails at the specified interval (in minutes).

Mapping Message Fields to Issue Fields

When an e-mail is sent to a monitored address, HelpDesk generates an issue and copies information from the e-mail to specified issue fields. HelpDesk automatically creates a default mapping between the e-mail fields and specified issue fields when you integrate an account. For example, the *body* of the e-mail is copied to the issue's *Description* field. However, you can change the fields that the e-mail information is copied to using the **Edit Mapping** button.

To view the field mappings for the specified account:

Click the **Edit Mapping** button. The **Edit Mapping** window lists the fields in your selected project, with mandatory fields shown in red.



To map an e-mail field to a project field:

Double-click the row of the project field you wish to map. The **Edit Mapping Field** window is displayed.

In the **Edit Mapping Field** window, select the E-mail Field you want to map to the selected project field, and click the OK button.

To undo a field mapping:

In the **Edit Mapping** window, double-click the mapping you want to cancel.

In the **Edit Mapping** Field window, deselect the **Assign value to this field** check box and click the OK button.

Click the **OK** button to save your changes, and close the **Edit Mapping** window.

In addition to the usual E-mail Fields, a special field called **Lookup user from e-mail's sender** is included. If a project field is mapped to this field, the system will use the incoming e-mail's **From** address in an attempt to find an existing HelpDesk user or contact who matches the credentials. If a user is found, that user will be associated with the e-mail. Otherwise, a contact may be created automatically if the option **Create a contact based on the "from" address** in the Default Values is set (See [Setting Default Values for Issues Submitted by E-mail](#)).

For example, a typical mapping could be like this:

E-mail Field	Vector HelpDesk Field
Subject	Summary
Body	Description Log
From	Instead of mapping From to a Vector HelpDesk field, you can use the <Look up User from sender's e-mail> macro to fill in the field with Vector HelpDesk user ID.
To	Contact (this would allow you to search for issues submitted by e-mail)

Related Topics

[Setting Up E-mail Integration](#)

[Mail Settings](#)

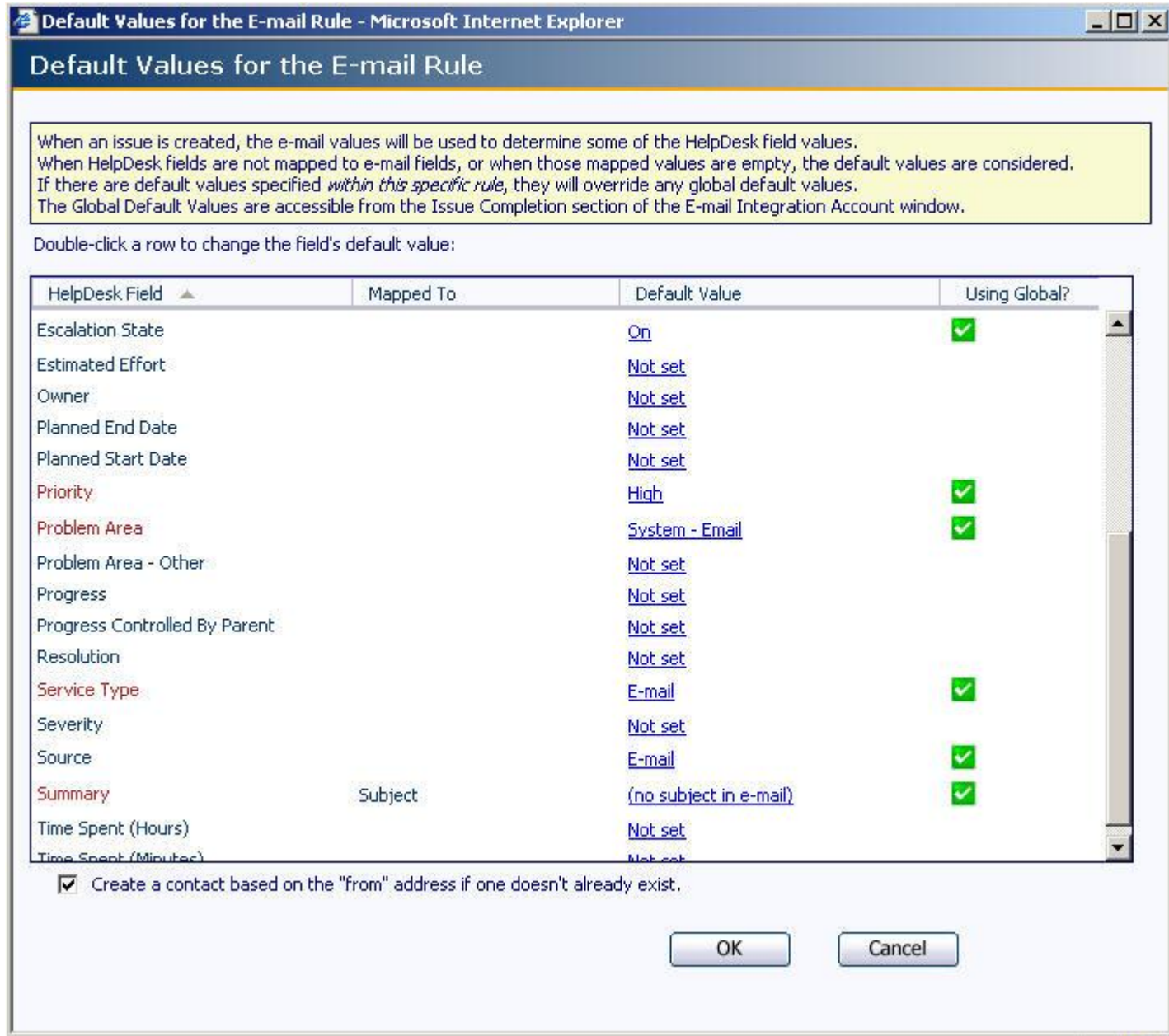
[Assigning Default Values for Issues Submitted by E-mail](#)

Setting Default Values for Issues Submitted by E-mail

While the Edit Mapping window will allow associating e-mail fields to HelpDesk project fields, it is possible to define a separate set of values that will be applied along with the imported e-mail fields. When HelpDesk fields are not mapped to e-mail fields, or when those mapped values are empty, the default values are considered. There are two different types of Default Values:

- **Global Default Values** are set in the **Issue Completion** section of the **E-mail Integration Account** window.
- **Rule Default Values** can be set within any specific Rule that has **Create** as an **Action Type**, and if specified, they can override the **Global Default Values**.

For example, you could have a **Global Default Value** that sets the HelpDesk field *Priority* to *Medium*. This may be acceptable in the majority of cases, but for the sake of this example, let's say a Rule is created to treat e-mails sent from the CEO to the HelpDesk system. In this case, you may want the issue *Priority* to be set to *High*, instead of *Medium*, but still use all other existing **Global Default Values**. By using the **Rule Default Values**, special cases like the one just described are possible.



If you mapped **Lookup user from e-mail's sender** to any HelpDesk field in the **Edit Mapping** window, selecting the **Create a contact based on the "from" address if one doesn't already exist** checkbox will enable the auto-creation of contacts when no match is found in the system. (See [Mapping Message Fields to Issue Fields](#))

Sending Automatic E-mails

From both the E-mail Integration Rules and the SLA Escalation Rules, you can send an e-mail message automatically as an action.

To send an automatic e-mail as an SLA Escalation Rule Action:

Log on to Web Admin.

Click the **SLA** tab and the **Service Levels** section. Select a Project and a Service Level and click the **Escalation Rules** tab. Load an Escalation Rule, and click **Send an e-mail** as an Action.

Enter the e-mail information and click OK. This e-mail will be sent when the conditions of the SLA Escalation Rule are met.

Tip: Automatic SLA Escalation Rule E-mail Actions are useful for informing the Owner of when they need to resolve an issue by.

To send an automatic e-mail as an E-mail Integration Rule Action:

Log on to Web Admin.

Click the **E-mail** tab and the **Incoming Mail** section. Select a Project load an E-mail Integration. Load a Mail Handling Rule, and click **Send an e-mail** as an Action.


Enter the e-mail information and click OK. This e-mail will be sent when the conditions of the Mail Handling Rule are met.

Tip: Automatic E-mail Integration Rule E-mail Actions are useful for replying to the person who sent the e-mail to tell them the number of the issue that the e-mail created so they can follow up on it at a later time.

Sending E-mails From the Web Views

To send an e-mail containing information about an issue:

Log on to a Web view.

Load an issue and click on the  button.

The E-mail Editor will open, with the default Current Issue **Template**. You can add the value of additional fields using the Field Value **Macro**.

Click the Send button.

This e-mail will be added to the issue's Conversation if the Save to Conversation checkbox is selected.

To Reply, Reply All and Forward E-mails from the Conversation or Queue:

Refer to the section [E-mail Conversation and E-mail Queue](#)

Service Level Agreements (SLA) and E-mails:

If the issue has an SLA agreement associated with it, the first time you send an e-mail from HelpDesk to the **Contact** of the issue, the **Actual Initial Response Date** and **Actual Initial Response Time** fields in the issue will automatically be set to the date and time when the e-mail is sent (if they aren't set already).


Using the E-mail Editor

The E-mail Editor in HelpDesk allows you and your users to create and send e-mail messages from the Web view. You can also configure e-mail to be sent automatically from SLA or E-mail Integration (for example, when HelpDesk creates a new issue from an incoming e-mail, or when an SLA rule changes the Owner of an issue).

Sending E-mails

Editing the To, CC, and From Fields

You can specify users by either looking up users and contacts in HelpDesk, using **macros** or typing in the e-mail address directly.

To lookup users and contacts in HelpDesk, beside the To, CC, or From box, click .

In the Select Users and Contacts dialog box, double-click the users and contacts you want to add.

The list of selected users and contacts is displayed under **Selected Users and Contacts**. You can edit this string of text, for example, to remove a user, or to add the e-mail address of a person who is not a user or contact.

Notes

The text box beside the Find button allows you to display all users and contacts whose names start with the same letters. In the text box, type the first few letters of the name and then click Find.

To display the complete list of users and contacts again, delete all text from the box and then click Find.

Click **Advanced** to search for all users and contacts whose names contain the same string, or to search based on e-mail addresses.

If you would like to send separate e-mails to several recipients, select the **Send e-mail to each recipient individually** checkbox. If you have recipients entered in the CC field, you will not be able to send individual e-mails.

Editing E-mail Content

You can type in any text you want, and you can use **macros** to insert the issue number, the name of the project, and the values of different fields (such as the Summary and Description Log).

If you prefer your e-mail body to be in HTML format, click the **HTML in Body** checkbox.

Attaching Files

Beside the Attachments box, click .

In the E-mail Content Attachments dialog, click **Browse** and locate the file you want to attach. Click **Upload** or **Link**.

This adds the file to the list of files attached to this e-mail message. Every time the e-mail message is sent, the files are attached to the message.

E-mail Conversation and Queue

E-mail integration brings the ability to view support-related and other e-mails directly from the Web views. The E-mail **Conversation** and **Queue** are where you can **view and manipulate** these integrated e-mails.

The E-mail Conversation

The E-mail Conversation is where you can access all the e-mails related to a specific issue.

To access an issue's E-mail Conversation:

Log on to the Web view where the issue can be found.

Find the issue using the **search** feature.

Select the issue from the summary list.



Click **Conversation** in the toolbar.

The E-mail Queue

The E-mail Queue is where you can access and process all the e-mails pending assessment from a help desk analyst. These e-mails have not been associated to any existing issue.

To access the E-mail Queue:

Log on to a Web view of the desired Project. (Each Project has its own E-mail Queue.)



Click **Queue** in the toolbar.

Processing E-mails in the WebView

The E-mail Conversation and Queue are where integrated e-mails can be processed, in the Web view. There, you can:

Send a new e-mail.

Reply to an e-mail.

Forward an e-mail.

Link an e-mail to an existing issue.

Create a new issue from an e-mail.

Sending New E-mails

E-mails are created and sent using the **e-mail editor** (see [Using the E-mail Editor](#)).

You might be interested, for example, in sending an e-mail and keep a copy in an issue's E-mail Conversation and **Activity Log**.

New e-mails' fields will be completely blank with the exception of the From address which is determined by your [E-mail Options](#), and the Subject which, for the Conversation only, is pre-filled with the respective issue number.



To send a new e-mail from an E-mail Conversation or the E-mail Queue, click .

Replying to E-mails

E-mail replies are created and sent using the **e-mail editor** (see [Using the E-mail Editor](#)).

You might be interested, for example, in requesting more information from a customer after receiving a support e-mail.

E-mail replies are pre-filled with the original e-mail's content, and the From address is determined either by the original e-mail's **Integration Account's** (see [Setting up E-mail Integration](#)) e-mail address, or by your [E-mail Options](#) if the original e-mail didn't come from E-mail Integration.

To reply to an e-mail from an E-mail Conversation or the E-mail Queue, click  or , depending whether you want to reply only to the sender or to all the original recipients as well.

Note: see [Sending E-mails From Web views](#) to see how an E-mail Conversation reply can automatically update the respective issue's Actual Initial Response Date and Time.

Forwarding E-mails

Forwarded e-mails are created and sent using the [E-mail Editor](#).

You might be interested, for example, in sending a copy of a customer e-mail to a colleague for second-line support.

Forwarded e-mails are pre-filled with the original e-mail's content with the exception of the To recipient which is left blank. The From address is determined by your [E-mail Options](#).

To forward an e-mail from an E-mail Conversation or the E-mail Queue, click .

Lining an E-mail to an Existing Issue

Whether an e-mail is already in an issue's E-mail Conversation or still in the E-mail Queue, you might find out it is related to some (other) existing issue.

To link an e-mail to an issue, from an E-mail Conversation or the E-mail Queue, click .

After the e-mail is linked to this new issue, it can be found in this issue's E-mail Conversation.

Creating a New Issue From an E-mail

Whether an e-mail is already in an issue's E-mail Conversation or still in the E-mail Queue, you might decide a new issue needs to be created with regards to the information found in it.

To create a new issue from an e-mail in an E-mail Conversation or the E-mail Queue, click .

After the issue is created, you will receive a message stating the new issue's number, and the e-mail will now be in this issue's E-mail Conversation.

E-mail Macros

Macros are available when you use the E-mail Editor in the Web views and Web Admin.

Macros resolve values for information related to the issue so you don't have to look it up manually.

Macro	Available In Fields	Description
<Contact>	To, CC, From	The person who is entered in the Contact field in the issue. This is usually the person who reported the issue.
<Owner>	To, CC, From	The person who is entered in the Owner field in the issue.
<Previous Owner>	To, CC, From	The person who was entered in the Owner field in the issue before it was reassigned to a new HelpDesk user.
<Submitter>	To, CC, From	The person who is entered in the Submitter field in the issue. This is the person who entered the issue in HelpDesk.
<Work Team Members>	To, CC	The people who belong to the work group that is entered in the Assigned Work Team field in the issue.
<Reply To Sender>	To	The person who sent the e-mail. This only applies when replying to an e-mail through the Conversation or Queue or from the E-mail Integration Actions.
<Reply To CC>	CC	The people who were CCed on the e-mail that was sent. This only applies when replying to an e-mail through the Conversation or Queue or from the E-mail Integration Actions.
<Integration E-mail>	From	The e-mail address specified for the E-mail Integration Account.
<Server Mail Sender From Admin Options>	From	The e-mail address specified in the Mail Settings for who to Send Automatic E-mails Notifications From.
Field Value	Subject, Body	The value of a field in the issue.
Issue Number	Subject, Body	The number of the issue.
Project Name	Subject, Body	The name of the project the issue is in.
Link To Issue	Body	Generates a URL that you can include in the e-mail to allow people who have access to the Web views to log in to a specific view and automatically load the issue you specified.

To use a macro:

Position your cursor in the e-mail where you would like the resolved macro to be inserted.

Click on the **Macros** tab.

Click on the macro you would like to insert. In the Web views, the macro will be resolved to the current value. In templates and in Web Admin, the macro will remain unresolved so that it can be resolved when the automatic e-mail is sent or when the template is applied to an e-mail.

E-mail Templates

Templates are available when you use the E-mail Editor in the Web views.

Use templates to store reusable e-mail content so that your users can quickly create e-mails when standard responses are required. A template can contain Subject, Body and Attachment information.

To create a template:

All users who have access to the Web View – Manage E-mail Templates can create and edit templates.

To create a template, open the E-mail Editor to create a new e-mail. Click the **Templates** tab and click **Add a new template**.

By default, the new template is filled in with any subject, attachment and body text that was entered in the e-mail you added the template from.

Enter a **Name** for the template, as well as any subject, attachment or body text that you want in the template.

Click OK, and your new template will be available in the Templates list for all users who have the feature Web View – Manage E-mail Templates.

To use a template:

All users who have access to the Web View – Manage E-mail Templates can use templates.

To use a template, open the E-mail Editor to create a new e-mail. Click the **Templates** tab and select the template you want to use. Click **Apply** the selected template.

Web View E-mail Options

The Web view E-mail Options affect all e-mails created from the Web views, be it from the E-mail toolbar button, an issue's [E-mail Conversation](#) or the [E-mail Queue](#).

Two options are available to Web view users regarding e-mails:

The **From address** to be used when composing e-mails.

The requesting of **read receipts**.

By default, every user's E-mail Options are:

From Address: their own e-mail address.

Read Receipts: requested.

To change your E-mail Options:

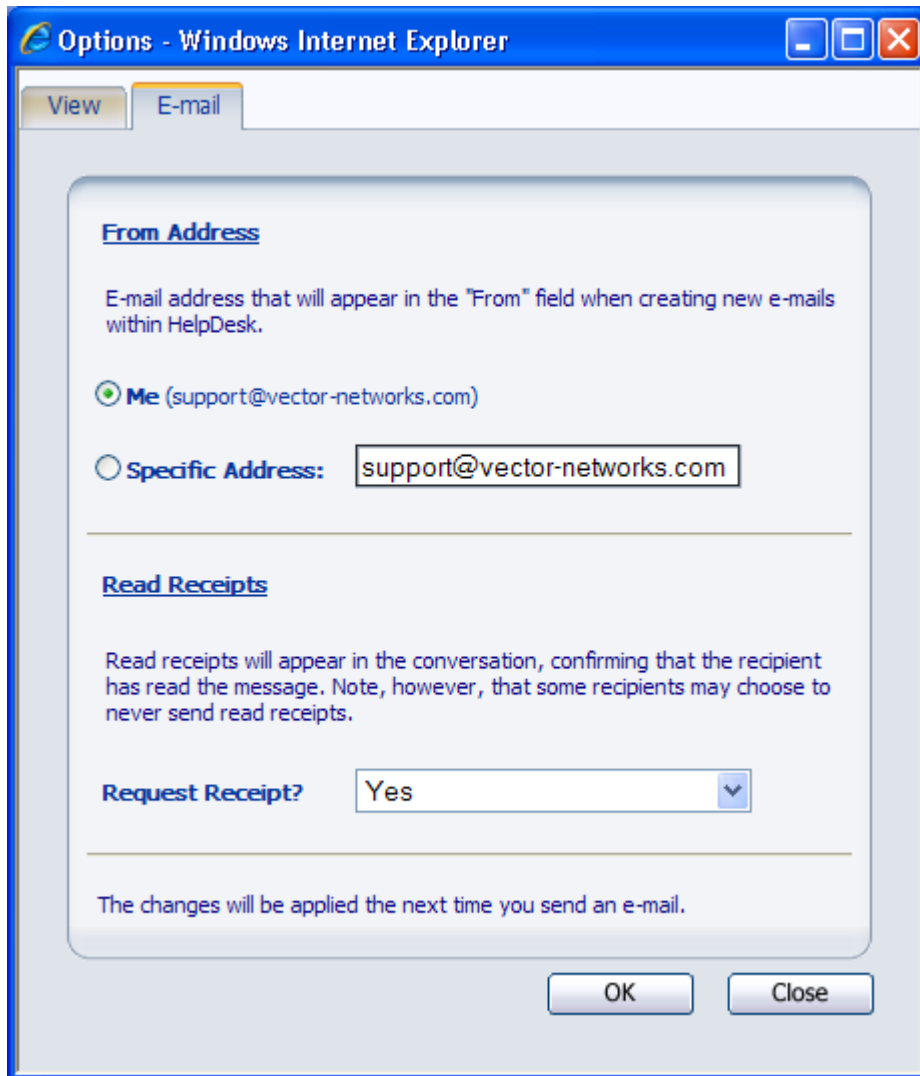
Log on to a Web view.



Click **Options** in the toolbar.

Click the E-mail tab to open it.

Perform the desired changes and click OK.



The "From Address" E-mail Option

You have the option to use the e-mail address of your HelpDesk user account or any other e-mail address, when sending e-mails from Web views.

No matter what this option is set to, replies to e-mails coming from an [E-mail Integration Account](#) will always have the respective account's e-mail address as their From address.

The "Read Receipts" E-mail Option

You have the option to request a read receipt for all the e-mails you send from any Web view.

Depending on the From address of your e-mails and the [E-mail Integration](#) configuration, these read receipts can be processed automatically by the E-mail Integration feature.

Note that read receipts can be recognized by their subjects starting with "Read:".

Chapter 9 - Defining Workflow Rules

About Workflow Rules

Workflow rules allow you to define and enforce an issue handling process. Together with e-mail notifications, workflow rules help you automate the tracking and management of issues.

Related Topics

[What Can You Do with Workflow Rules?](#)

[What You Should Know about Workflow Rules](#)

[What is a Workflow Rule?](#)

[Creating Rule Templates](#)

[Defining Conditions](#)

[Defining Rules](#)

[Deleting Rules](#)

[Renaming Rules](#)

[Using Macros in Rules](#)

[Setting Possible Values](#)

[Changing When Rules Are Evaluated](#)

[Changing the Order of Evaluation](#)

[Applying Workflow Rules](#)

[Disabling Workflow Rules](#)

What Can You Do with Workflow Rules?

When a user selects a choice from a choice list, you can:

- Select choices in other choice lists.
- Change the possible choices in other choice lists.

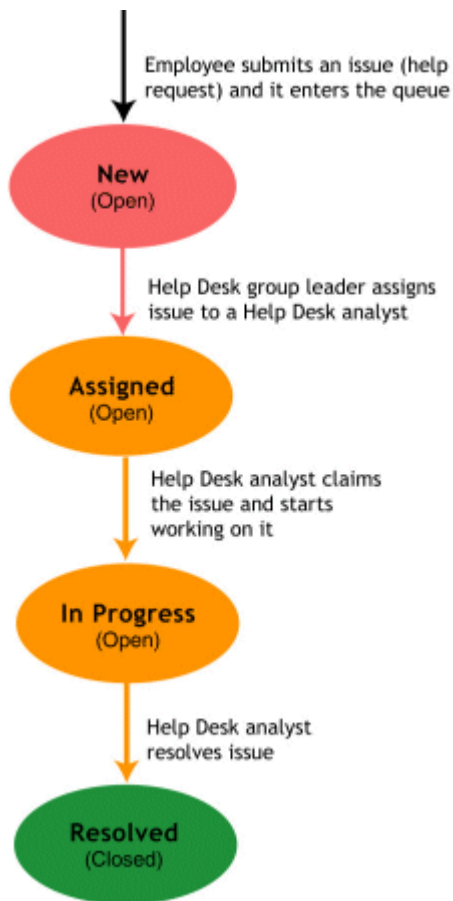
These are the basics of workflow rules. However, this explanation leaves out some important details:

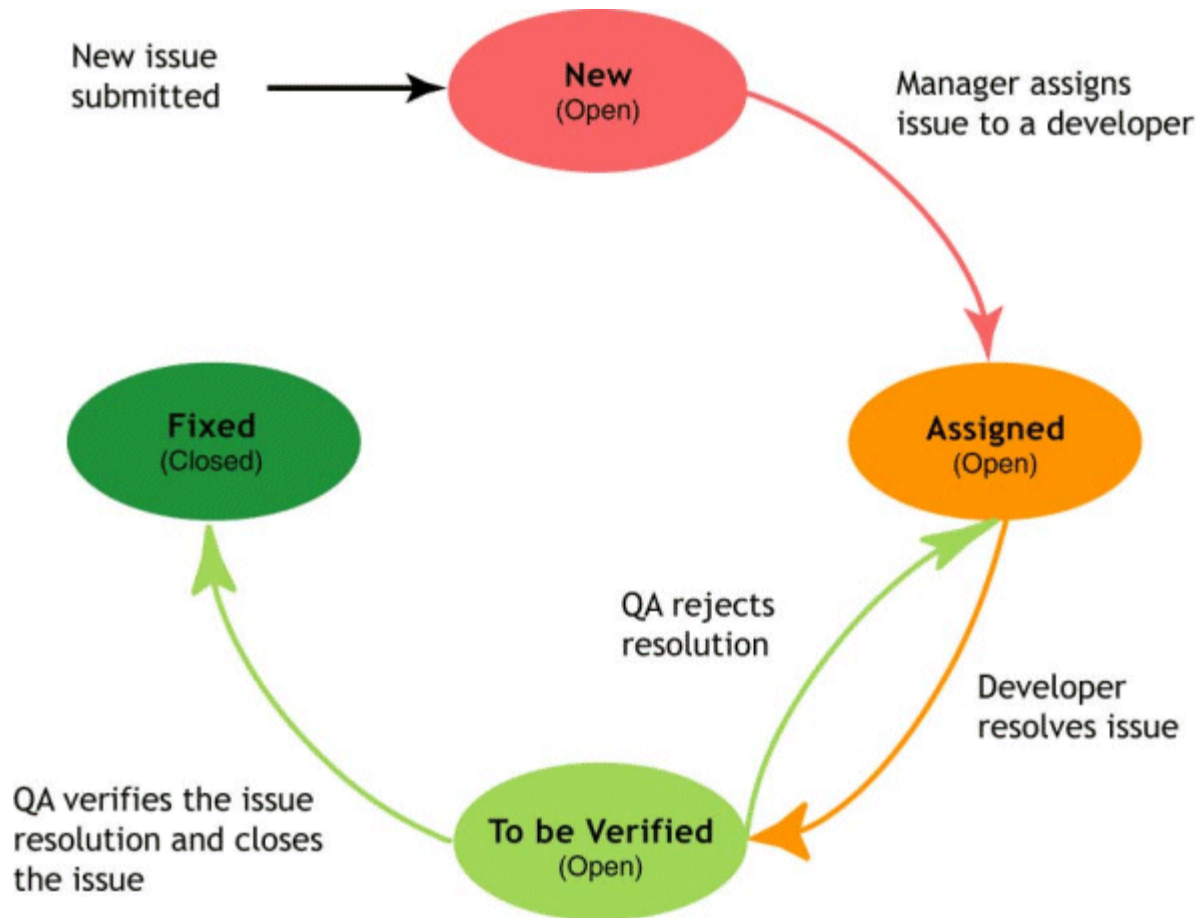
- By default, rules are applied when a user creates, saves, or loads an issue. You can also force rules to be evaluated when a user selects a choice.
- Workflow rules can also be based on more complicated conditions. For example, a rule may require that certain choices are selected from a number of different choice lists, or that the user is a member of a specific group, or both.

Automate Workflow

By controlling the possible values of the **Progress** field, you can define and enforce a process.

Simple workflow controlled by Progress values





Examples

Example 1:

After an analyst starts work on an issue and marks it **In Progress**, you can enforce a process where only the analyst can mark the issue as **Dropped**, **Resolved**, or **To be Verified**.

When:

<User in Group> = Help Desk Analyst AND

Progress = In Progress

The possible values are:

Progress = Dropped

Progress = Resolved

Progress = To be Verified

Note that **Progress = In Progress** is an implied possible value. A choice list can always be set back to its current value. For example, if a user is not a help desk analyst and an issue is marked **In Progress**, the **Progress** list contains only one choice: **In Progress**.

This rule is an example of a *possible values* rule.

Example 2:

You can prevent anyone except a group leader from assigning new issues.

When:

<User in Group> = Help Desk Group Leader AND
Progress = New

The possible values are:

Progress = Assigned

This prevents new issues from being resolved or dropped without first being assigned to an analyst by the group leader. If a user is not a group leader, the only possible choice is **New**.

Example 1:

You can enforce a process where developers must forward issues to QA:

When:

<User in Group> = Developers AND
Progress = Assigned

The possible values are:

Progress = To be Verified

And where only QA can close issues (or assign them back to developers):

When:

<User in Group> = QA AND
Progress = To be Verified

The possible values are:

Progress = Fixed
Progress = Assigned

Note that a choice list can always be set back to its current value. For example, if a user is not part of **QA** and an issue is marked **To be Verified**, the **Progress** list contains only **To be Verified**.

Example 2

You can prevent anyone except a manager from assigning new issues.

When:

<User in Group> = Managers AND
Substate = New

The possible values are:

Substate = Assigned

This prevents new issues from being resolved or dropped without first being assigned to a developer by the manager. [Create Related Choice Lists](#)

You can define rules to create a relationship between two choice lists.

Examples

If **Problem Type** can be **Hardware**, **Software**, or **System**, **Problem Area** can be a type-specific list that displays a list of hardware components, software applications, or system components.

When:

Problem Type = Hardware

The possible values are:

Problem Area = Disk
Problem Area = Monitor
Problem Area = Keyboard

Problem Area = Memory

You need to create similar rules for software and system problems.

By default, workflow rules are evaluated when an issue is saved. For related choice lists like the ones in this example, you probably want to evaluate the rule whenever the **Problem Type** changes. Otherwise, users would have to select a **Problem Type**, save the issue, and then select the **Problem Area**.

Depending on the Type (Software Defect, Hardware Defect, or Documentation Defect) you can update the Functional Area list.

When:

Type = Documentation Defect

The possible values are:

Functional Area = Online Help

Functional Area = User Guide

Functional Area = Tutorials

Functional Area = Readme

You need similar rules for software and hardware defects.

By default, workflow rules are evaluated when an issue is saved. For related choice lists like the ones in this example, you probably want to evaluate the rule whenever the Type changes. Otherwise, users would have to set the Type, save the issue, and then select the Functional Area. Set Field Values

Instead of setting the possible values of a choice list, you can define rules that select choices from other lists. These type of rules are called a dependent values rules, because they make the value of one field depend on the value of another field.

Examples

This rule that assigns a default owner based on the **Problem Area**.

When:

Owner = <None> AND

Problem Area = SW - Outlook

The values to set are:

Owner = Erick Yanez

This rule assigns a default owner for new issues, but allows the issue to be reassigned. Without **<New Issue> = yes**, users could not change the owner of the issue. This rule assigns a default owner based on the Functional Area.

When:

<New Issue> = yes AND

Functional Area = Security

The values to set are:

Owner = Erick Yanez

Related Topics

[What You Should Know about Workflow Rules](#)

[What is a Workflow Rule?](#)

[Creating Rule Templates](#)

[Defining Rules](#)

[Changing When Rules Are Evaluated](#)

What You Should Know about Workflow Rules

- **Rules work with single-choice list fields**

You cannot define rules that apply to any other type of field, including multiple-choice list fields.

- **Rules are defined per project**

All Web views of a project share the same workflow rules. You cannot disable the workflow rules for specific Web views. The rules are either enabled for all views or disabled for all views.

- **Rules can impact performance**

Defining a large number of rules may impact the performance of Web views.

Using workflow rules to set default values is a good choice if you have a small number of rules and are not limited by resources (server, network, end-user computers).

- **Rules are evaluated when issues are loaded and created**

By default, workflow rules are evaluated when an issue is loaded or created (note that when you save an issue it is immediately re-loaded, triggering the workflow rules). You can force rules to be evaluated when a user changes the value of one of the fields specified in the condition. Evaluating rules on field changes has a potentially higher performance cost. However, if you want to implement dependent fields, you should evaluate the workflow rule on field changes.

- **Changes to choice lists can break workflow rules**

If you remove choices from a choice list, or change the meaning of a choice, rules that use the choice list may stop working or result in unexpected behavior.

- **By default, rules apply to all users**

To build group-specific rules, use the macro **<User in Group>** in your conditions.

- **The order of rules is important**

Rules are evaluated in the order they are listed in the Workflow Editor. For example, in the default workflow, the rule **Admins-<Any>** is the first rule in the list. This ensures that any member of the **Admin** group can make any change to the **Progress** field.

If the **Admins-<Any>** rule is last, then an analyst who is also a member of **Admins** does not have full administrator permissions for changing the **Progress** field. The stricter rules are evaluated first, limiting the changes the analyst can make. If the **Admins-<Any>** rule is last, a developer who is also a member of **Admins** does not have full administrator permissions for changing the **Progress** field. The stricter Developer rules are evaluated first, limiting the changes the developer can make.

Related Topics

[What Can You Do with Workflow Rules?](#)

[What is a Workflow Rule?](#)

[Creating Rule Templates](#)

[Defining Conditions](#)

[Defining Rules](#)

What is a Workflow Rule?

A workflow rule has this simple format:

```
if ( condition ) then  
    action
```

The **condition** can test:

- If a user belongs to a specific group
- If a specific choice was selected from a choice list.

Multiple conditions can be joined with a logical **AND**. The only test operator available is the equal to operator (=).

If the rule is a possible values rule, the **action** can specify the possible values for one or more choice lists. If the rule is a dependent values rule, the **action** can select choices from one or more choice lists.

Related Topics

[What Can You Do with Workflow Rules?](#)

[What You Should Know about Workflow Rules](#)

[Creating Rule Templates](#)

[Defining Conditions](#)

[Defining Rules](#)

Creating Rule Templates

Before you can define any rules, you must create a template. Templates define the fields used in rules, and rules provide the values. For example, a template might look like this:

When:


```
<User in Group> = _ _ _ _ AND
Progress = _ _ _ _
```

The possible values are:


```
Progress = _ _ _ _
```


A template defines what the rules look like, while a rule fills in the _ _ _ _ parts with specific values.

To create a rule template:

- 1 Log on to HelpDesk Web Admin. Click the **Workflow** tab. In the **Project** list, click a project.
 - Workflow rules based on this template apply to all Web views of this project.
- 2 Click **Template** and click **Add**.
- 3 In the Add New Template dialog:
 - In the **Template Name** box, type a name for the template.
 - In the **Template Description** box, type a short description of the template.
 - Select the type of rules you want to define:
 - A **Dependent Values** rule makes the value of one field depend on the value of another field. For example, if How Found = Reported by Customer then Priority = Highest.
 - A **Possible Values** rule makes the possible values of one field depend on the value of another field. For example, if Type = Doc Defect then the possible values for Functional Area = Help, README, or Manual.
- 4 Click **OK**.
- 5 In the list of templates and rules, click the new template.
- 6 Under **Conditions**, click . Then click the **Field** box three times and click a field whose value you want to test. Repeat for each additional field you want to test.

Conditions determine when a rule is applied. If all the field tests evaluate to True, the rule is applied.

Note that the **Field** list contains single-choice fields only.
- 7 If you created a dependent-values template, click  under **Dependent Values**, then click the **Field** box three times and click the field whose value you want to set. Repeat for each field whose value you want to set.

If you created a possible-values template, click  under **Possible Values**, then click the **Field** box three times and click the field whose possible values you want to specify. Repeat for each field whose possible values you want to specify.

Note that the **Field** list contains single-choice fields only.

Related Topics

- [What Can You Do with Workflow Rules?](#)
- [What You Should Know about Workflow Rules](#)
- [What is a Workflow Rule?](#)
- [Defining Conditions](#)
- [Defining Rules](#)
- [Changing When Rules Are Evaluated](#)
- [Changing the Order of Evaluation](#)
- [Applying Workflow Rules](#)

[Disabling Workflow Rules](#)

Defining Conditions

Defining Conditions based on User Groups

By default, a rule applies to all users. To build group-specific rules, use the macro **<User in Group>** in your conditions.

If a user belongs to a group for which there is no rule, then for possible values, the fields displays all possible values.

Rules that apply to the Users group apply to all users, because all users are members of the Users group. Rules for specific groups can override the base rule defined for the Users group.

Defining Conditions for New Issues

To define rules that apply only to new issues, use the macro **<New Issue>** in the condition. **<New Issue>** is equal to **Yes** only for issues that have never been saved.

Defining Rules

Defining a rule involves filling in the template with specific values.

Note that while you edit rules, you can edit the values, but you cannot add or remove fields. To add or remove fields you must edit the rule template.

To define a rule:

- 1 Log on to HelpDesk Web Admin. Click the **Workflow** tab.
- 2 In the **Project** list, click a project, then click a rule template.
- 3 Click **Rule** and then click **Add**.
- 4 Under **Conditions**, specify the values to test. For each field, click the **Value** box three times and then click the field value you want to test for.
- 5 If you are defining a dependent-values rule, then under **Dependent Values**, for each field, click the value you want to set. To use the value of another field, double-click the **<Values of Field???** macro.

If you are defining a possible-values rule, then under **Possible Values**, for each field, select the check boxes for each possible value.
- 6 Click **Apply** to apply the rule to the Web views of the project.

Notes

You can also copy a rule and edit it. To copy a rule, click the rule, then click **Rule**, click **Copy**, and type a name for the new rule.

Related Topics

[What Can You Do with Workflow Rules?](#)

[What You Should Know about Workflow Rules](#)

[What is a Workflow Rule?](#)

[Creating Rule Templates](#)

[Deleting Rules](#)

[Renaming Rules](#)

[Using Macros in Rules](#)

[Setting Possible Values](#)

[Changing When Rules Are Evaluated](#)

[Changing the Order of Evaluation](#)

[Applying Workflow Rules](#)

[Disabling Workflow Rules](#)

Deleting Rules

To delete a rule:

- 1 In the list, click a rule.
- 2 Click **Rule** and then click **Remove**.
- 3 Click **Apply** to apply the changes to the Web views of the project.

Related Topics

[Defining Rules](#)

[Renaming Rules](#)

[Disabling Workflow Rules](#)

Renaming Rules

To rename a rule:

- 1 In the list, click a rule.
- 2 Click **Rule** and then click **Rename**.
- 3 Type the new name for the rule.

To change the default names for new rules:

- 1 In the list, click a rule template. Click **Template** and then click **Properties**.
- 2 In the **Name** rules according to box, type the new default name for rules.

By default, rule names are based on the condition values (the values entered in the **Value** column). The string **%Value0%** represents the value in the first row of the condition, **%Value1%** represents the value in the second row, and so on.

If you use a text string (such as *WorkflowRule*) as the default rule name, rule names are formed by appending a number to the string.

Related Topics

[Defining Rules](#)

[Deleting Rules](#)

[Applying Workflow Rules](#)

[Disabling Workflow Rules](#)

Using Macros in Rules

<Any>

Use the <Any> macro in conditions to define a rule that applies to any value of a field, including <Empty>. For example, in the default workflow, the Admins-<Any> rule allows members of the **Admins** group to set any value in the **Progress** field.

<Empty>

Use the <Empty> macro in conditions to define a rule that applies when a field is empty.

<User>

<User> represents the current user (the user currently logged on to the Web view). You can use <User> in conditions, as a possible value, and as a dependent value.

<New Issue>

<New Issue> is used to create rules that apply only when an issue is created.

For example, to ensure all issues submitted by managers have high priority by default, a rule like this can be created:

Condition	Dependent Values
<New Issue> = Yes	Priority=High
<User in Group> = Managers	

If the <New Issue> condition is not included, the manager would not be able to change the priority because the rule would reset the value to High when the issue is saved.

<Value of Field???)>

This macro allows you to define a Dependent Values rule that assigns the value of a field to another field. For example, when an issue is fixed, a workflow rule could set the value of the Fixed By field to <Value of Owner>.

When you add a dependent values rule, you'll see the <Value of Field???)> macro in the **Values** column of the **Dependent Values** table. Double-click <Value of Field???)> and then select the field whose value you want to use.

By default, the Submitter field is not enabled. To use the field in the <Value of Field ???)> macro, you must enable it using the Field Editor in HelpDesk Admin.

Related Topics

[What Can You Do with Workflow Rules?](#)

[Defining Conditions](#)

[Defining Rules](#)

[Setting Possible Values](#)

Setting Possible Values

When you set the possible values of a field, you don't have to include the current value of the field in the list. For example, given this rule:

When:

<User in Group> = Employees AND
Progress = Waiting

The possible values are:

Progress = Dropped
Progress = In Progress
Progress = Resolved

When **Progress** is set to **Waiting**, the **Progress** list contains **Dropped**, **In Progress**, **Resolved**, and **Waiting**.
When:

<User in Group> = Developers AND
Substate = Assigned

The possible values are:

Substate = To Be Verified

When **Substate** is set to **Assigned**, the **Substate** list contains **Assigned** and **To Be Verified**.

Related Topics

[What Can You Do with Workflow Rules?](#)

[What You Should Know about Workflow Rules](#)

[Defining Conditions](#)

[Defining Rules](#)

[Using Macros in Rules](#)

[Setting Possible Values](#)

Changing When Rules Are Evaluated

By default, workflow rules are evaluated when an issue is loaded and when issues are created.

However, you can force rules to be evaluated when a user changes the value of one of the fields specified in the condition. Keep in mind that evaluating rules on field changes can have a potentially higher performance cost.

To evaluate rules on field changes:

- 1 In the list, click a template.
- 2 Click **Template** and then click **Properties**.
- 3 Select the **Evaluate rules when users change field values** check box.
- 4 In the Template Properties dialog, click **OK**.
- 5 Click **Apply** to apply the change to the Web views of the project.

Related Topics

[What Can You Do with Workflow Rules?](#)

[What You Should Know about Workflow Rules](#)

[Defining Rules](#)



[Changing the Order of Evaluation](#)

[Applying Workflow Rules](#)

Changing the Order of Evaluation

Rules are evaluated in the order they are listed in the Workflow Editor. You cannot change the order of rules in a template (except by creating them in the desired order), but you can change the order of the rule templates.

To change the order of evaluation of rule templates:

- 1 In the **Templates** list, click a template.
- 2 Click  or  to move the template up or down in the list.
- 3 Click **Apply** to apply the change to the Web views of the project.

Related Topics

[What Can You Do with Workflow Rules?](#)

[What You Should Know about Workflow Rules](#)

[Creating Rule Templates](#)

[Defining Rules](#)

[Changing When Rules Are Evaluated](#)

[Applying Workflow Rules](#)

Applying Workflow Rules

When you edit a rule, define a new rule, define a new group of rules, or change the group options, you must apply the changes. **Apply** automatically enables the group of rules. If you enable the rules, but don't apply them, nothing happens.

To apply workflow rules:

- 1 In the list, click a template.
- 2 Click **Apply**.

Notes

Web view users must log out and then log back on before the changes take effect.

Related Topics

[Defining Rules](#)

[Deleting Rules](#)

[Renaming Rules](#)

[Changing when Rules Are Evaluated](#)

[Changing the Order of Evaluation](#)

[Disabling Workflow Rules](#)

Disabling Workflow Rules

You can disable all the rules based on a given template.

To disable workflow rules:

- 1 In the list, click a template.
- 2 Click **Template** and then click **Properties**.
- 3 Clear the **Enable in all Web views of the project** check box, and click **OK** in the message box that appears.
- 4 In the Template Properties dialog, click **OK**.
- 5 Click **Apply** to apply the change to the Web views of the project.

Related Topics

[Defining Rules](#)

[Deleting Rules](#)

[Applying Workflow Rules](#)

Chapter 10 - Defining Service Level Agreements

About Service Level Agreements

A [service agreement](#) is an agreement between the help desk and users. It defines a required level of service for the users.

A service agreements can be with individual users (contacts), with all users in a department, or all users in a company.

A service level is a guarantee of a certain level of service. For example, a basic service level may provide 9-to-5 service during the regular working week, while a more comprehensive service level might provide 24 hour service, 7 days a week.

Each service level has its own hours of service, target response and closure times for issues, and escalation rules.

A Web view used by help desk analysts has an **SLA** tab. This tab contains information about the service level agreement that applies to the issue.

For example, when employee submits new issue, the **Escalation State** is automatically set to On, and the **Problem Area** is set based on the Service Type selected by the employee. Based on the service type, priority, and the employee's contact information (name, department, and company), Vector HelpDesk sets the **Target Initial Response Time**, **Target Closing Time** and **Associated SLA** fields.

Setting Up Service Agreements

- 1 Define [companies](#) and [departments](#), so you can create service level agreements with groups of users. When you create an agreement, it can be either with a specific user or with all users in a department or in a company.
- 2 Define the [escalation levels](#).
- 3 Define the [service types](#).
- 4 Define [service levels](#). Each service level is defined by the following:
 - [Target times](#)
 - [Escalation Rules](#)
 - [Operational Hours](#)
- 5 Define [service agreements](#).
- 6 Optionally, define [workflow rules](#). Vector HelpDesk includes default workflow rules for the Service Type and Escalation State fields in Web views.

Target Times

A service level defines target response and closure (resolution) times for each possible priority value.

Target Initial Response Time The time it takes to initially respond to a new issue. When a help desk analyst responds to an issue, the analyst has to enter the response date and time on the SLA tab of the Web view.

Target Closure Time The time it takes to resolve the issue, either by fixing the problem or providing an acceptable workaround. When an issue is resolved, Vector HelpDesk automatically enters the date and time into the issue.

When you create a service level, the level gets the default target times.

To edit the target times:

- 1 In the **Service Level** list, click a service level.
- 2 On the **Target Times** tab, click a row (for example, to edit the target times for the Highest priority, click that row).
- 3 Click **Edit**.
- 4 In the Edit Target Times dialog, type the target times in the **Initial Response Time** and **Closure Time** boxes.

The target times must be integer values, such as 2, 7, or 10. You cannot enter decimal values, such as 2.5.

You can change the time units between minutes, hours, and days. For example, to change from hours to minutes, click **hour(s)** and then click **minute(s)** in the pop-up list.






Escalation Levels

Escalation levels allow the help desk to better identify, query, report, and monitor priorities and urgent issues. By default, Vector HelpDesk defines five escalation levels. **Level 1** is the lowest level; **Level 5** is the highest.

Time-based escalation rules are used to define a sequence of escalation levels. For example, when a new issue is first submitted to the help desk, the issue is at **Level 1**. If the help desk does not respond to the issue within the target initial response time, the issue is escalated to **Level 2**. As more time goes by without either a response or a resolution, the escalation level of the issue is raised, until it reaches the highest escalation level.

Escalation rules and SLAs are enforced only for issues where the **Escalation State** is set to **On**. **Escalation State** is a field on the **SLA** tab of a Web view. By default, escalation is on, but help desk analysts can pause or disable escalation.

To edit the escalation levels:

- 1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Choices** tab.
- 2 In the **Project** list, click a project.
- 3 In the **Choice List** list, click **Escalation Level**.
- 4 Edit the escalation levels:
 - To edit an escalation level, click the escalation level and then click .
 - Click  to create a new escalation level.
 - To delete an escalation level, click the escalation level and then click .
 - To reorder the list, click an escalation level and then use  and  to move it.

About Escalation Rules

Escalation rules change the escalation level of an issue. Each service level has its own escalation rules.

An escalation rule consists of conditions and actions. If all the conditions are true, then all the actions are executed.

To define an escalation rule:

- 1** In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **SLA** tab.
- 2** In the **Project** list, click a project.
- 3** Click **Service Levels**.
- 4** Click the **Escalation Rules** tab.
- 5** Click **Add**, or click an existing rule and then click **Copy**.
- 6** In the **Escalation Rule Name** box, type a name for the rule.
- 7** Define the **condition** that triggers the rule.
- 8** Define an **action** that changes the escalation level when the condition is met.
- 9** Click the check box to enable the condition.

Order of Evaluation

Escalation rules are evaluated in the order they are listed on the **Evaluation Rules** tab. The first (top) rule is evaluated first, then the next rule below it, and so on.

You can change the order of evaluation by using the Up and Down buttons.

Conditions

You can define multiple conditions. When you have multiple conditions, all conditions must be satisfied before the corresponding actions are executed.

Note that you must select the check box adjacent to a condition; otherwise the condition is disabled.

Target Time conditions

You can define conditions based on the target response and closure times. For example, an escalation rule can escalate an issue if the issue has not been assigned to a help desk analyst within the guaranteed response time for that service level.

Alternatively, an escalation rule can send an e-mail reminder when an issue has not been resolved within the guaranteed response time.

<Field> = <Value>

For convenience, the Add Escalation Rule editor allows you to easily add conditions that test the values of up to five choice list fields.

Meets the query <Value>

For more complex conditions, you can use queries built with the [Query Editor](#) in HelpDesk Admin. Queries can use any number and type of field to determine whether to escalate an issue.

Actions

Escalation rules can perform the following actions:

- Change the issue priority, owner, assigned work team, or escalation level.
- [Send](#) an e-mail message.
- [Run](#) a program.

Sending E-mail Messages

To send an e-mail message

- 1 Under **Actions**, click **Send an e-mail**.
- 2 In the E-mail Content editor, complete the **To**, **Subject**, and **Body** of the message. You can also attach files.

Editing the To, CC, and From Fields

You can use the macros or you can specify users.


To insert a macro:

- 1 Click in the **To**, **CC**, or **From** box.
- 2 Under **Available Macros**, click the macro you want to insert.

The **Contact** is the person who reported the issue, while **Submitter** is the person who entered the issue into Vector HelpDesk. For example, if a help desk analyst takes a support call, the contact is the person who called, and the analyst is the submitter.

Previous Owner is useful when you send an e-mail message because an issue is reassigned.

To add users to the To, CC, and From lists:

- 1 Beside the **To**, **CC**, or **From** box, click .
- 2 In the Select Users and Contacts dialog box, double-click the users and contacts you want to add.

The list of selected users and contacts is displayed under **Selected Users and Contacts**. You can edit this string of text, for example, to remove a user, or to add the e-mail address of a person who is not a user or contact.

Notes

- The text box beside the **Find** button allows you to display all users and contacts whose names start with the same letters. In the text box, type the first few letters of the name and then click **Find**.
To display the complete list of users and contacts again, delete all text from the box and then click **Find**.
- Click **Advanced** to search for all users and contacts whose names contain the same string, or to search based on e-mail addresses.

Editing E-mail Content

You can use macros to insert the issue number, the name of the project, and the values of different fields (such as the Summary and Description Log).

To insert the value of a field:

- 1 In either the **Subject** box or the **Body** box, click where you want to insert the field value.
- 2 Under **Available Macros**, click **Field Value**.
- 3 In the **Field Value** dialog, click the field whose value you want to insert.

If you want to insert the issue description, insert the **Description Log** field, not the **Description** field.

To switch to HTML format:

- Select the **HTML in Body** check box.

Attaching Files

To attach files to an e-mail message:

- 1 Beside the **Attachments** box, click .
- 2 In the **E-mail Content Attachments** dialog, click **Browse** and locate the file you want to attach. Click **Link**.

This adds the file to the list of files linked to this e-mail message. Every time the e-mail message is sent, the linked files are attached to the message.

Running Programs

To run a program, type the location and name of the program in the **Run Program** box. You can include command-line arguments for the program.

The default working directory for programs is the Windows system folder (for example, C:\Windows\system32).

Notes

Programs must not have a user interface or require any user input. The programs are run silently by the **Mq.Evaluator** service. By default, the programs are run under the credentials of the same user who runs the **Mq.Evaluator** service (CensusUser by default). You can check this in the Services dialog (**Administrative Tools** > **Services**, open the **Properties** for the service, and then go to the **Log On** tab).

Specifying Operational Hours

The operational hours define when the service level agreement is in effect. The service level clock stops running outside of those hours.

For example, if the hours of operation are from 9 to 5, Monday to Friday, then a new issue submitted at 4:59 p.m. on Friday is not going to trigger any escalation rules during the weekend. If the service level specifies an initial response time of 30 minutes, then the help desk has until about 9:29 a.m. on Monday before any escalation rules are triggered.


Note also that help desk analysts can stop the clock for specific issues (by setting the Escalation State to Paused). For example, the analyst may “hit pause” while waiting for more information from the end user.

To set the operational hours

- 1** In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **SLA** tab.
- 2** In the **Project** list, click a project.
- 3** Click **Service Levels**.
- 4** Click the **Operational Hours** tab.
- 5** In the **Start Time** and **End Time** boxes, enter the working hours during which the service level is in effect. Type the times in the format 9:00 AM or 5pm.
- 6** Enter the number of working hours in a day.
- 7** Add holidays and other exceptions to the standard working hours.
 - aClick **Add**.
 - bClick the day you want to add.
 - cClick **OK**.

Defining Service Levels

To define a service level:

- 1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **SLA** tab.
- 2 Click **Service Levels**.
- 3 In the **Project** list, click a project.
- 4 Beside the **Service Level** box, click .
- 5 In the Add Service Level dialog, type a name and a description for the service level.

Creating Service Agreements

A service agreement is an agreement between the help desk and users. The service agreement defines a required level of service for the users.

A service agreement can be with individual users (contacts), with all users in a department, with all users in a company or apply to everyone (Global).

Global Service Level Agreements

If you would like to define an agreement that will be applied for all issues that don't fall under other agreements for users, departments or companies, select **Global** for who the agreement is with. To override the global agreement for specific scenarios, you can still define agreements for certain users, departments or companies.

To create a service agreement:

- 1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **SLA** tab.
- 2 In the project list, click a project. (Each project has its own service agreements.)
- 3 Define a service type. (Each agreement covers a specific type of service, such as Network, Software, or Hardware service.)
- 4 In the **Service Agreements** section, click **Add**.
- 5 In the Add Service Agreement dialog, enter the required information:

Agreement Name The name used to identify the agreement.

Agreement Description Allows you add some notes or comments related to the agreement. Note that you can also attach documents to an agreement.

Agreement is with a A service agreement can be with individual users (contacts), with all users in a department, all users in a company or everyone (Global).

Agreement Customer Depending on whether the agreement is with a contact, a department, or a company, this list includes all the possible users, departments, or companies. If the agreement is global, this list is disabled.

Reporting Period Choose whether reports **for this agreement** are weekly, monthly, quarterly, semi-annual, or annual. The reports are available from the **Service Agreements** section of the **SLA** tab (click the **Reports** button).

Applying Service Agreements to Issues

You can apply a service agreement to the issues that are already in the project database. To do this, use a query to specify the issues to which the service agreement is applied.

To apply a service agreement:

- 1** In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **SLA** tab.
- 2** In the project list, click a project.
- 3** In the **Service Agreements** section, click a service agreement.
- 4** Click **Apply**.
- 5** In the Apply Service Agreement dialog, click a query. The agreement is applied to the issues returned by that query.

Disabling Service Agreements



To disable a service agreement:

- 1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **SLA** tab.
- 2 In the project list, click a project.
- 3 In the **Service Agreements** section, click a service agreement.
- 4 Click **Edit**.
- 5 In the Update Service Agreement dialog, clear the **Service Agreement is enabled** check box and then click **OK**.

Service Level Reporting

Vector HelpDesk includes a set of service level reports to help you monitor and measure help desk performance against service level objectives,

To view a service level report:

- 1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **SLA** tab.
- 2 In the project list, click a project.
- 3 In the **Service Agreements** section, click **Reports**. (If the **Reports** button is disabled, click a service agreement.)
- 4 In the Service Agreement Reports dialog, click the report you want to view, and then click **OK**, or double-click the report.
- 5 In the toolbar of the Crystal Reports viewer, click  to print the issue. Click  to save the report as PDF, Word, or Excel.

Service Types

A service type identifies a type of service delivered by the help desk to help desk customers. The Service Type (for example, software or hardware) is set when an issue is submitted.

Vector HelpDesk includes default workflow rules that base the **Problem Area** on the **Service Type**.

To edit the list of service types:






1 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **SLA** tab.

2 In the **Project** list, click a project.

Each project has its own list of service types.

3 In the **Choice List** list, click **SLA Service Types**.

4 Edit the service types:

- Click  to create a new service type.
- To delete a service type, click the service type and then click .
- To rename a service type, click the service type and then click .
- To reorder the list, click a service type and then use  and  to move the service type.

Chapter 11 - E-mail Notification

About Notifications

Vector HelpDesk can generate notifications (e-mail messages) to inform team members of changes to the project database. Notification messages are sent through the native e-mail system.

Notifications keep team members up to date with changes to reported issues. They don't have to run queries, inspect issues, and review revision histories to find out about changes. Instead, they get e-mail messages whenever new issues are assigned to them, or whenever someone edits a issue already assigned to them.

You should try to keep the number of notifications to a minimum. Defining too many notifications for field updates can overwhelm users with e-mail, resulting in users missing important notifications. Use notifications for changes to fields like **Owner**, **Progress**, and **Priority**.

Related Topics

[What Can You Do With Notifications?](#)

[Editing Notifications](#)

[Specifying Notification Recipients](#)

[Defining When Conditions](#)

[Specifying Notification Contents](#)

[Managing Workflow with Notifications](#)

[Setting Up Notifications](#)

[Handling Notification Failures](#)

What Can You Do With Notifications?

You can send notifications to specific users or contacts, or to the current owner, the previous owner, or the contact (the person who reported the issue).

To trigger notifications, use simple *when conditions* that test for changes to an issue:

- Sending a notification when an issue is reassigned

When an issue is reassigned, you can use the **<Owner>** and **<Previous Owner>** to send notifications to both the new and the previous owner.

```
Send Notification To:
  <Owner>;<Previous Owner>
```

```
When:
  Owner Update
```

The when condition in this example tests for updates to the **Owner** field.

- Sending a notification when a field is updated

You can use the **Update** test to send a notification when a field is updated.

```
When:
  Priority Update AND
  Revision Number > 1
```

In this when condition, the **Update** test checks for changes to the **Priority** field.

Testing the **Revision Number** allows you to distinguish between new issues and existing issues that have had their priority changed. Without the **Revision Number > 1** test, a Priority Updated notification would be generated each time someone sets the **Priority** when they submit a new issue.

- Sending a notification when a field is set to a specific value

You can send a notification when the priority of an issue is changed to ASAPHighest. To do this, use a when condition that looks like this:

```
When:
  Priority Update AND
  Priority = ASAPHighest
```

This when condition sends a notification when **Priority** is changed. Without the test, a notification would be sent every time an issue with the specified **Priority** is saved.

- Sending a notification when a new issue is submitted

Each issue has a revision number that increases by one each time it is saved. When an issue is first submitted, this revision number is set to 1, so you can test the revision number to find new issues. For example:

```
When:
  Revision Number = 1 AND
  Submitted Date = <Today> AND
  Priority = ASAP OR Priority = TodayPriority = Highest OR Priority = High
```

This when condition looks for new issues submitted today with the highest priorities.

- Sending a notification when certain users update an issue

If employees mark the issues they reported as **Dropped** or **Resolved**, you can notify the owner of the issue using this test:

```
Send Notification To:
  <Owner>
```

```
When:
  <User in Group> = Employees AND
  Progress Update
```

The **<User in Group>** macro allows you to test for user group membership. When a manager changes the priority of an issue, you can notify the owner of the issue.

```
Send Notification To:
```

```
<Owner>
When:
  <User in Group> = Employees AND
  Progress Update
```

- [Sending a notification when an issue is resolved](#)

You can use the **<Contact>** macro to notify the submitter when an issues is resolved, or dropped. For example:

```
Send Notification To:
  <Contact>
```

```
When:
  Progress Update AND
  ( Progress = Resolved OR
    Progress = Dropped )
```

To send an e-mail with a different subject for each possible case (for example, **Issue resolved**, and **Issue dropped**), define a separate notification for each **Progress** value.

Related Topics

[About Notifications](#)

[Editing Notifications](#)

[Specifying Notification Recipients](#)

[Defining When Conditions](#)


[Specifying Notification Contents](#)

[Managing Workflow with Notifications](#)

[Setting Up Notifications](#)

Editing Notifications

HelpDesk Admin provides a Notification editor for editing notifications. To open the editor, click **Notification Editor** on the **Project** menu. With the Notification editor, you can:

- Specify who receives the notification. Select the names of one or more users from the **Send Notification to** list.
- Define when you want the system to send the notification. Click the **When** list  button to define the condition.
- Specify what you want to include in the notification message. The body of a notification message can include information from the **issue** or the **revision history**.
- Specify the reason for the notification. Type a one-line description in the **Notification Description** box. You can include this description in the body of the e-mail message.

Related Topics

[About Notifications](#)

[What Can You Do With Notifications?](#)

[Specifying Notification Recipients](#)

[Defining When Conditions](#)

[Specifying Notification Contents](#)

[Managing Workflow with Notifications](#)

[Setting Up Notifications](#)

Specifying Notification Recipients

While you can send notifications to specific Vector HelpDesk users and contacts, it is more useful to send notifications to the users listed in the **Owner** and **Contact** fields of an issue. You can do this using macros. For example, to send a notification to the owner of an issue, click the **<Owner>** macro in the **Send Notification To** list.

<Owner> The user whose name is currently entered in the Owner field.

<Previous Owner> The user who owned the issue before it was reassigned.

<Dev Owner> In projects based on XSupportBugTrk, **<Dev Owner>** is the developer assigned to an issue, and **<Owner>** and **<Previous Owner>** are the current and previous support owners.

<Contact> The person whose name is currently entered in the **Contact** field.

Related Topics

[About Notifications](#)

[What Can You Do With Notifications?](#)

[Editing Notification](#)

[Defining When Conditions](#)

[Specifying Notification Contents](#)

[Managing Workflow with Notifications](#)

[Setting Up Notifications](#)

[Handling Notification Failures](#)

Defining When Conditions

When conditions determine when Vector HelpDesk sends notifications. A when condition is a test. If an issue satisfies the test, Vector HelpDesk sends a notification for that issue. You typically use when conditions to:

- Test for updates of a given field. For example, a when condition can generate a notification when issues are reassigned (by testing if the **Owner** field has been updated).
- Test for updates by a specific user or by users in a specific group. For example, a when condition can generate a notification when anybody except a manager updates the **Priority**.

To edit the when conditions for a notification, use the When editor. Like the Query editor, the When editor allows you to combine multiple conditions with parentheses and the **And** and **Or** operators.

To open the When Editor:

Click  beside the **When** field in the Notification editor.

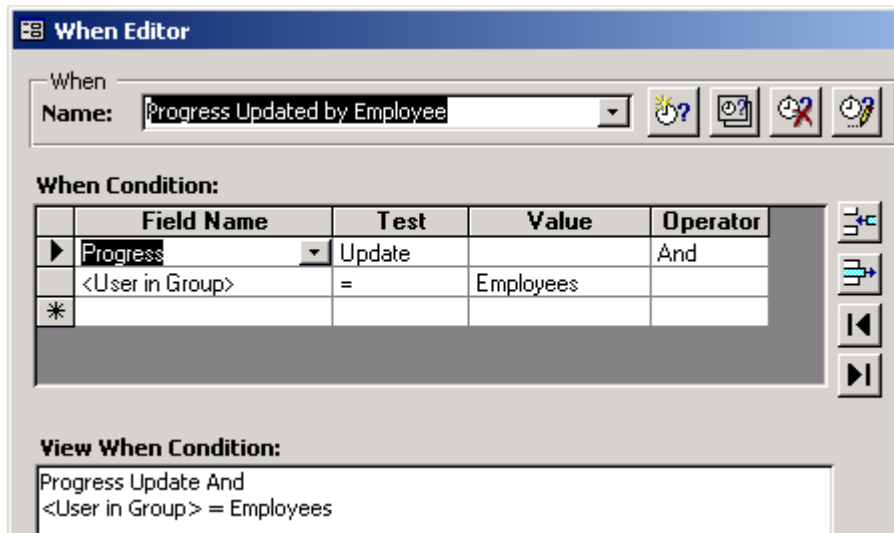
Sending Notifications of Field Updates

To send a notification when someone edits a field, use the **Update** test.

To send Update notifications for a field, select the [Maintain Revision History](#) check box for that field (in the Field Editor).

Basing Notifications on Users

The **Field Name** list includes the macros **<User>** and **<User in Group>**. Use these macros together with = and <> to test who updated an issue. For example, the following condition sends a notification when any employee updates the **Progress** of an issue.



Related Topics

- [About Notifications](#)
- [What Can You Do With Notifications?](#)
- [Editing Notification](#)
- [Specifying Notification Recipients](#)
- [Specifying Notification Contents](#)
- [Managing Workflow with Notifications](#)
- [Setting Up Notifications](#)

[Customizing the Format of Attachments](#)

[Attaching Custom Information](#)

[Adding Custom Mail Contents](#)

[Adding New Notification Reports](#)

Specifying Notification Contents

A notification message can include information about the event and issues that generated the notification. For example, if Vector HelpDesk generates a notification when a new high priority issue is submitted, the message can include a brief description, such as **New high priority issue**.

Notifications generated because of changes to a field can include entries from the Revision History that show the changes. The notifications can also include either a summary or a complete copy of the issue.

To specify the contents, you select one or more of the following from the Include list:

- **Notification Description** is the text entered in the **Notification Description** box of the Notification editor.
- **Detailed** is a copy of the issue.
- **Revision Record** is the entry from the **Revision History** for the change that generated the notification.
- **Summary** is a brief summary of the issue.

The **Notification Description**, **Revision Record**, and **Summary** are included as text in the message body. **Detailed** is included as a separate attachment.

To change the information included in the **Summary** section, edit the **Notification - Summary** report. For the **Detailed** attachment, edit the **Notification - Detailed Record** report.

By default, the **Detailed** attachment is an HTML file. If you use Crystal Reports for listing reports, the **Detailed** attachment is an RTF file. See [Viewing Reports](#) for more information on using Crystal Reports for listing reports.

The subject of an e-mail notification message is automatically generated, and has this format:

```
Notification [<project>]: Record <issue number>  
<notification name>
```

For example:

```
Notification [HelpDesk]: Record 11 Progress Updated
```

Related Topics

[About Notifications](#)

[What Can You Do With Notifications?](#)

[Editing Notification](#)

[Specifying Notification Recipients](#)

[Defining When Conditions](#)

[Managing Workflow with Notifications](#)

[Setting Up Notifications](#)

Managing Workflow with Notifications

The **Progress** (or status) of an issue indicates where the issue is in your issue tracking system. As the status of an issue changes from **New** to **Assigned** to **In Progress** to **To be Verified** to **Resolved**, different team members become responsible for the issue.

For example, when the issue is assigned to a help desk analyst, you can use update notifications to help manage your help desk workflow. To do this, define a notification that is sent to <**Owner**> when the issue is assigned and the **Progress** field set to **Assigned**.

When the help desk analyst marks the issue an **In Progress**, you can send a notification to the employee who submitted the issue. Similarly, when an Employee updates the issue (for example, by adding more details to the description), you can have Vector HelpDesk notify the help desk analyst of the change. Each time the current owner changes the **Substate** and reassigns the issue, Vector HelpDesk sends a notification to the new owner. For example, suppose a developer fixes an issue:

- 1 The developer sets the **Substate** to **Fix To Be Reviewed** and reassigns the issue to the person responsible for reviewing the fix (the code reviewer).
- 2 The code reviewer receives a Substate update notification telling them that they need to review the fix.
- 3 After the code review, the reviewer then sets **Substate** to **Reviewed** and reassigns the issue back to developer responsible for the fix. The reviewer can also add notes and comments in the **Fix Information** field of the issue record.
- 4 The developer receives a Substate update notification telling them that the fix is reviewed and accepted.
- 5 The developer then checks in the fix, sets **Substate** to **To Be Verified**, and reassigns the issue to a tester.

The tester receives the Substate update notification and reviews the fix. After the fix is verified, the tester sets the Substate to Fixed and the issue is closed. Related Topics

[About Notifications](#)

[What Can You Do With Notifications?](#)

[Editing Notification](#)

[Specifying Notification Recipients](#)

[Defining When Conditions](#)

[Specifying Notification Contents](#)

[Setting Up Notifications](#)

[Handling Notification Failures](#)

Setting Up Notifications

To set up notifications for HelpDesk Web, use:

- HelpDesk Web Admin, a Web-based administration utility.
- HelpDesk Admin, a Windows-based administration tool.

To set up notifications:

- 1 Set up the notification service.
- 2 In HelpDesk Admin or in HelpDesk Web Admin, set the Mail Server options. These options configure the mail server used to send notifications, and specify how often the notification services checks for new notifications to send. For more information, refer to [Mail Settings](#).
- 3 In HelpDesk Admin, define the notifications you want to send.

Setting Up the Notification Service

Vector HelpDesk installs a Microsoft Windows service named **Mq Issue Agent**. This service runs on the server where you installed HelpDesk Web, and takes care of generating and sending e-mail notifications.

In the Windows Services, you can specify whether you want the service to start automatically whenever the server boots or you want to start the service manually.

To set up the notification service on Windows 2003 and Windows XP:

- 1 Open the Windows **Control Panel**. Double-click **Administrative Tools**, then double-click **Services**.
- 2 In the right pane, right-click the **Mq Issue Agent** service, and then click **Properties**.
- 3 On the **Log On** tab, select **This account** to choose a user account. Type the password for the account in the **Password** and **Confirm password** fields.

The account must be a valid domain user account and have permissions through the network.

- 4 Click **Apply**.
- 5 On the **General** tab, stop and start the service.

To set up the notification service on Windows 2000:

- 1 Open the Windows **Control Panel**, click **Performance and Maintenance**, then click **Administrative Tools** to open Services.
- 2 In the right pane, right-click the **Mq Issue Agent** service, and then click **Properties**.
- 3 On the **Log On** tab, select **This account** to choose a user account. Type the password for the account in the **Password** and **Confirm password** fields.

The user account must be a valid domain user account and have permissions through the network.

- 4 Click **Apply**.
- 5 On the **General** tab, stop and start the service.

To set up the notification service on Windows NT:

- 1 Click **Start, Settings, Services** to open Services.
- 2 Stop the **Mq Issue Agent** service.
- 3 Click **Startup**.
- 4 In the Service dialog, select **Startup Automatic** if you want to start the service automatically every time the computer is restarted.
- 5 Select **This Account** and enter a valid domain user account and password that has permissions through the network.
- 6 Click **OK**.

- 7 Click **Start** to start the service.

Setting the Mail Server Options

You can set the outgoing e-mail server options in HelpDesk Admin or in HelpDesk Web Admin.

To set the mail server options in HelpDesk Admin:

- 1 Click **Options** on the **Tools** menu.
- 2 Set the server mail options. These options are used when sending notifications.
- 3 If you use an SMTP mail system, click **Test** to check your settings.

Option	Description
Server Mail Sender	Name of sender for SMTP e-mail. Some SMTP mail servers require the sender name to be a valid e-mail address. Note that this name does not appear in the From field.
SMTP Server	Name or IP address of your SMTP mail server. You can test your settings by clicking Test .
Server SMTP Port	The port for the SMTP server.
Server Mail Interval	Specifies how often (in minutes) Vector HelpDesk generates notifications.
Send Invalid Notifications To	If the Maximum Notification Retries is surpassed, the notification will be sent to this address. If there is no address specified, the notification service will continue trying to send to the original recipient.
Maximum Notification Retries	The maximum number of retries for e-mail notifications. Once surpassed, the notification will be sent to the address specified in the Send Invalid Notifications To option.

To set the mail server options in Web Admin, refer to [Mail Settings](#).

Related Topics

[About Notifications](#)

[What Can You Do With Notifications?](#)

[Editing Notification](#)

[Specifying Notification Recipients](#)

[Defining When Conditions](#)

[Specifying Notification Contents](#)

[Managing Workflow with Notifications](#)

[Handling Notification Failures](#)

Handling Notification Failures

If Vector HelpDesk is unable to send a notification, it tries to resend the notification. By default, the maximum number of retries is 100. When the maximum number of retries is reached, the notification is sent to the e-mail address specified by the **Send Invalid Notifications To** option.

To change the **Maximum Notification Retries** option or the **Send Invalid Notifications To** option, click **Tools>Options** in HelpDesk Admin.

Chapter 12 - Generating Web Views

What is a Web View?

Web views are different views of a Vector HelpDesk project. Each Web view of a project can display different issues and different fields.

For example, employees don't need to see all the issues in the database, just the ones they reported. Also, they don't need to see internal notes and other information entered by the support staff. Support staff, on the other hand, need access to all the information in the issue database.

For example, customers on a beta list don't need to see all the issues in a project, just the ones submitted by the beta list. And customers don't need to see any fix-related information added to the issues by the development staff. Internal development staff, on the other hand, needs access to all the issue information in the project.

Related Topics

[Generating Web Views - Issues to Consider](#)

[Starting the Web View Editor](#)

[Types of Web View](#)

[Setting Web View Attributes](#)

[Setting Group Access Permissions](#)

[Adding the Child Issues Tab](#)

[Exporting Fields](#)

[Exporting Queries](#)

[Editing Field Attributes](#)

[Pointing Users to Web Views](#)

[Generating Web Views](#)

[Copying Web Views](#)

[Deleting Web Views](#)

[Renaming Web Views](#)

[Changing the Date and Time Formats for Web Views](#)

[Customizing Web Views](#)

[Setting Default Values for Fields](#)

About the Web View Editor

Use the Web View Editor to create, edit, and generate Web views. To create Web views, you must run the Web View Editor on the Web server.

To start the Web View Editor from HelpDesk Admin:

- On the **Tools** menu, click **Web**, then click **Web View Editor**.

The **Tools > Web > Web View Editor** command is also available when the Web View editor is installed on the same computer where you are running HelpDesk Admin.

To start the Web View Editor from the Start menu:

- Click **Start > Programs > Vector > HelpDesk > Web View Editor**. On the **Start** menu, point to **Programs**, click **Vector HelpDesk**, and then click **Web View Editor**.

Related Topics

[Creating Web Views](#)

[Copying Web Views](#)

[Deleting Web Views](#)



[Renaming Web Views](#)

Creating Web Views



To create a new Web view, you must run the Web View Editor on the Web server. Web View Editors installed on other computers can only edit and regenerate existing Web views.

You can either create a new, blank Web view or you can copy an existing web view. Copying allows you to reuse all the settings in the existing Web view. For example, when you [copy a Web view](#), all the field attribute settings are copied.

To create a new, blank Web view:

- 1 Run the Web View Editor on the Web server.
- 2 Click **New View** , type the name of the Web view, and click OK.
- 3 In the **Project Name** list, click a project.
- 4 In the **View Type** list, click the type of view you want to generate.
- 5 Set the [group access permissions](#) for the view.
- 6 Set the [Web view attributes](#).
- 7 [Export fields](#) to the Web view.
- 8 [Export queries](#) to the Web view.
- 9 Click  to save your settings and generate the Web view.

Notes

- To log on to the Web view, click .
- Click  to save your settings without generating the Web view.

Related Topics

[Generating Web Views - Issues to Consider](#)

[Starting the Web View Editor](#)

[Types of Web View](#)

[Setting Web View Attributes](#)

[Setting Group Access Permissions](#)

[Adding the Child Issues Tab](#)

[Exporting Fields](#)

[Exporting Queries](#)

[Editing Field Attributes](#)

[Pointing Users to Web Views](#)

[Generating Web Views](#)

[Deleting Web Views](#)



[Renaming Web Views](#)

[Changing the Date and Time Formats for Web Views](#)

[Customizing Web Views](#)

Generating Web Views

To generate a Web view:

- 1 In the **Project / View** list, click a Web view.
- 2 Click  to generate the Web view.
- 3 To log off all users before generating the Web view, click **Yes**. If you click **No**, users logged on to the Web view do not see the changes until they next log on.
- 4 Click **Yes** to overwrite the existing files.
- 5 After the Web view is generated, click  to log on to the Web view and test it.

Notes

- You can generate Web views without using the Web View Editor. On the Web server computer, click **Start > All Programs > Vector > HelpDesk > HelpDesk Tools > Generate Web Views**.

Related Topics

[Starting the Web View Editor](#)


[Creating Web Views](#)

[Releasing Databases](#)

Copying Web Views

You can create a Web view based on an existing Web view. Note that if you copy a view and then change the project, all view settings are cleared.

To copy a Web view:

- 1 In the **Project / View** list, click a Web view.
- 2 Click **Copy** .
- 3 Type a name for the new Web view.

The Web View Editor creates a new Web view that is an exact copy of the selected Web view.

Related Topics

[Starting the Web View Editor](#)

[Creating Web Views](#)


[Generating Web Views](#)

[Deleting Web Views](#)

[Renaming Web Views](#)

Deleting Web Views

To delete a Web view:

- 1 In the **Project / View** list, click a Web view.
- 2 Click **Delete** .

Deleting a view deletes all the generated files and folders (used by that Web view) on your server.

Related Topics

[Starting the Web View Editor](#)


[Creating Web Views](#)

[Copying Web Views](#)

[Renaming Web Views](#)

Renaming Web Views

To rename a Web view:

- 1 In the **Project / View** list, click a Web view.
- 2 Click **Rename** .
- 3 Type a new name for the Web view.

Related Topics

[Starting the Web View Editor](#)

[Generating Web Views](#)

[Creating Web Views](#)

[Copying Web Views](#)

[Deleting Web Views](#)

Types of Web Views

Normal Views

Normal views allow users to submit and update issues, to view the history and e-mail conversation of the issue, to view reports and summary lists, and more. This type of Web view has more features available than the other types and every user session (from logon to logoff) takes up one license.

Read-only Views

Read-only views allow users to review existing issues, but not to edit them. All fields are read-only, and users cannot create or submit new issues.

Knowledge Base Views

Knowledge Base views provide a simple search front-end to a project. Users can search by keyword or enter an article number.

A Knowledge Base view allows an unlimited number of users to search the KB database. All you need is a single Vector HelpDesk user account. All users automatically log on to the view with this account (in fact, users never see the logon window, they go straight to the view).

This user account must belong to a group that has permission to open the Web view, and to add and update contacts.

For more information, refer to [Knowledge Base Views](#).

Submit-only Views

Submit-only views are used to submit new issues. A submit-only view is basically just a form and a **Submit** button. Users cannot run queries or edit (or even view) existing issues.

A submit-only view allows an unlimited number of users to submit issues. All you need is a single Vector HelpDesk user account. Users automatically log on to the view with this account (in fact, users never see the logon window, they go straight to the view).

This user account must belong to a group that has permission to open the Web view, and to add and update contacts. The account is used to set the **Submitter** field.

If you have more than one submit-only view for the same project, you may want to create separate accounts for each view. This allows you to distinguish between issues submitted from different views.

The user submitting the issue is considered the contact. Users must enter their contact information (name, e-mail, and so on) the first time they submit an issue.

Self-Service Views

Self-Service views are a type of Web view to be used by either internal or external HelpDesk users to enter issues and be able to view (and possibly edit) the issues they have submitted. You can choose to allow them to edit certain fields in issues that they have submitted (for example, the Description field); or allow them to edit fields that were left empty when they submitted the issue; or simply view their submitted issues in a read-only format.

For more information, refer to [Self-Service Views](#).

How licenses are used depending on the type of Web view

Each user session in a Normal Web view takes up one concurrent or floating license.

Submit-Only views do not take up any license.

Unlike normal Web views, the Knowledge Base, Self-Service and Read-Only Web views follow a slightly different licensing model: for each concurrent license that is available, 5 logons will be allowed.

For example, if you have 20 concurrent licenses, and 15 licenses are already being used in Normal Web views, that means there are 25 logons (5 free concurrent licenses times 5) available to the Knowledge Base, Self-Service or Read-Only views. These 25 logons are shared across all four Web views - which means you could have a scenario where all logons are used up with the Knowledge Base view using 6 logons, the Self-Service view using 8, the Read-Only view 4, and the Submit-Only view 7.

If you have 20 concurrent licenses and none of them are in use, there are 100 logons available to the Knowledge Base, Self-Service or Read-Only views.

Reserving Licenses

It is possible to reserve licenses for specific users.

For more information, refer to [Reserving Licenses](#).

Setting Web View Attributes

To set Web view attributes:

- 1 In the shortcut bar, click  **Web View**.
- 2 Click  (beside **Attributes**) to open the Web View Attributes dialog:

Description

Description of the Web view. Displayed in the list of Web views that appears when a user logs on. The default description is the Project / View name. To include the project and view names in the description, use the macros <**ProjectName**> and <**ViewName**>.

If you change this attribute, you must regenerate the Web view.

Display All Read-Only Fields As Text

Read-only fields can be displayed as text (**Yes**) or as disabled controls (**No**). In a read-only Web view, all fields are read-only. In normal and submit-only Web views, read-only fields have been disabled through the Field editor.

If you change this attribute, you must regenerate the Web view.

Include VSS

Adds the **Version Control** tab to the Web view. This tab allows users to link issues to source files in a Microsoft Visual SourceSafe database, and to perform version control operations such as check out and check in directly from a Web view.

Issues per Page

The number of issues to show per page in the Summary List.

Timeout

The number of minutes of inactivity before the browser session times out and the user is logged off.

Load Issues Not In Query

If **Yes**, users can load any issue by typing the issue number in the **Issue** box of a Web view. If **No**, users can load only the issues shown in the Summary List.

Related Topics

[Creating Web Views](#)



[Types of Web View](#)

[Setting Group Access Permissions](#)

Setting Group Access Permissions

You can control access to Web views on a group-by-group basis. When users try to log on, they see only the Web views that they have permission to access.

To set group access permissions:

- 1 In the shortcut bar, click **Web View** .
- 2 Click  (beside **Groups Allowed to Open**) to open the View Permissions dialog.
- 3 In the **Groups** box, click the groups you want to be able to access the Web view.

If you allow the **Users** group to open the Web view, then all users can open the Web view.

The **Groups** box lists the groups that are allowed to open the project (as specified in HelpDesk Admin).

Related Topics

[Creating Web Views](#)

[Types of Web View](#)

[Setting Web View Attributes](#)

Knowledge Base Views

Knowledge Base views, or KB views, are a type of Web views used to openly publish specific information about certain issues. KB views act like Read-Only views only they are accessible by everybody. They can be designed to give customers and/or users such information as:

- Frequently asked questions (FAQ)
- Solutions to known problems
- Project-related news

Example of a branded KB View.

Search the Support Knowledge Base (KB)

Search for:

POWERED BY METAQUEST
census

Title	Product	Version
Support For Internet Explorer 7 (IE7 / IE 7)	Census	7.x
You may receive a message 'Error on Page' on the browser taskbar when working with the Workflow tab of Census Web Admin	Census	6.x;7.x
IIS Lockdown tool is causing ASP pages not to be read giving you the HTTP 404 error	Census	6.x
How to fix a Crystal Report with text being cut off when printing	Census	6.x
How to implement timestamping with just one memo field	Census	6.x

Page 1 of 3 (45 matches)

Article

Product: Census **Version:** 7.x

Updated Date: 11/3/2006

Symptoms:

Cause: Since Census 7.0 was released several months prior to the release of IE7, there are currently some limitations in the Web views and Web Admin.

Resolution: Download [this patch](#) and install it on the Census Server computer.

Article ID:

Using Knowledge Base Views

To use Knowledge Base views:

In your browser, type or paste the KB view URL given to you by your HelpDesk administrator.

Type in a **search** word or phrase and click Go.

Find the article (issue) in the summary list.

Click an article in the summary list to open it and view its details.

To integrate a Knowledge Base view to your website:

Open the HTML file corresponding to the webpage in which you want the KB view link to appear.

At the proper location, type `LINK TEXT`, where URL is the address specified in the Web View Editor, and LINK TEXT is the text you want to appear as the link.

Browse to this webpage in your website and click on the new link to verify that it is functional.

Creating and Updating a Knowledge Base View


To create or update a Knowledge Base view:

Create a **user account** to be used as the KB view logon account (see [Creating User Accounts](#)).

Note:

The user specified in the Web View Editor must belong to a group who has access to the **Ad-hoc Query** feature.

Use the **Web View Editor** to create or update KB views (see [Creating Web Views](#)).

Set the proper username and password for the KB view account by clicking  beside the View Type list. Export to the view the desired fields to be displayed, including the Add To Knowledge Base field.

To change the list of articles (issues) published to a KB view:

Update the KB Query to filter the issues as desired (see [About Queries](#)).

To change the information (fields) displayed in a KB view's summary list:

Update the KB Layout to include the desired fields (see [About Layouts](#)).

Update the KB Sort to have the summary list ordered the desired way (see [About Sorts](#)).

The Add to Knowledge Base Field

Knowledge Base views use their Project's KB Query by default. This Query controls which articles (issues) are accessible through the KB view. The Add to Knowledge Base field helps define this Query and allows HelpDesk analysts to easily specify if an issue is to be accessible as a KB article. By default, the KB Query returns all the issues where this field is set to either Internal or Public.

The Add to Knowledge Base field is found in the Resolution tab of the HelpDesk view by default. You will have to use the Web View Editor to export this field to other Web views if needed. Please note that this field must be exported to KB views when it is used in the KB Query; the Query will fail otherwise.

Typically, you will set this field to "No" to prevent the opened issue from being published in the KB view, and set it to anything else to have it published.

Self-Service Views

Self-Service views are a type of Web view to be used by either internal or external HelpDesk users to enter issues and be able to view (and possibly edit) the issues they have submitted. You can choose to allow them to edit certain fields in issues that they have submitted (for example, the Description field); or allow them to edit fields that were left empty when they submitted the issue; or simply view their submitted issues in a read-only format.

Using Self-Service Views

To use Self-Service views:

Log on to the HelpDesk Web views and select the HelpDesk / Employee view.

You will be able to create new issues and view any issues that you have submitted.

By default, you will be able to edit the Description and Attachments fields of the issues that you have submitted. You will be able to edit the Computer Name field of the issues that you have submitted if there is no value already entered.

Creating and Updating a Self-Service View


To create or update a Self-Service view:

Use the Web View Editor to create or update Self-Service views. Please refer to the [Generating Web Views](#) section for further details on this procedure.

To ensure the logged in user will only see the issues they submitted:

Only export the **My Reported Issues** query to the Self-Service view.

To specify which fields the user should be able to edit after the issue has been saved:


Click  beside the **View Type** box to open the Editable Fields dialog.

The fields that are exported to the Web view will be available in the **The user will always be able to edit** list.

Select the fields that the user should be able to edit after their issue is saved (up to a maximum of 2 fields).

Click OK and generate your Web view.

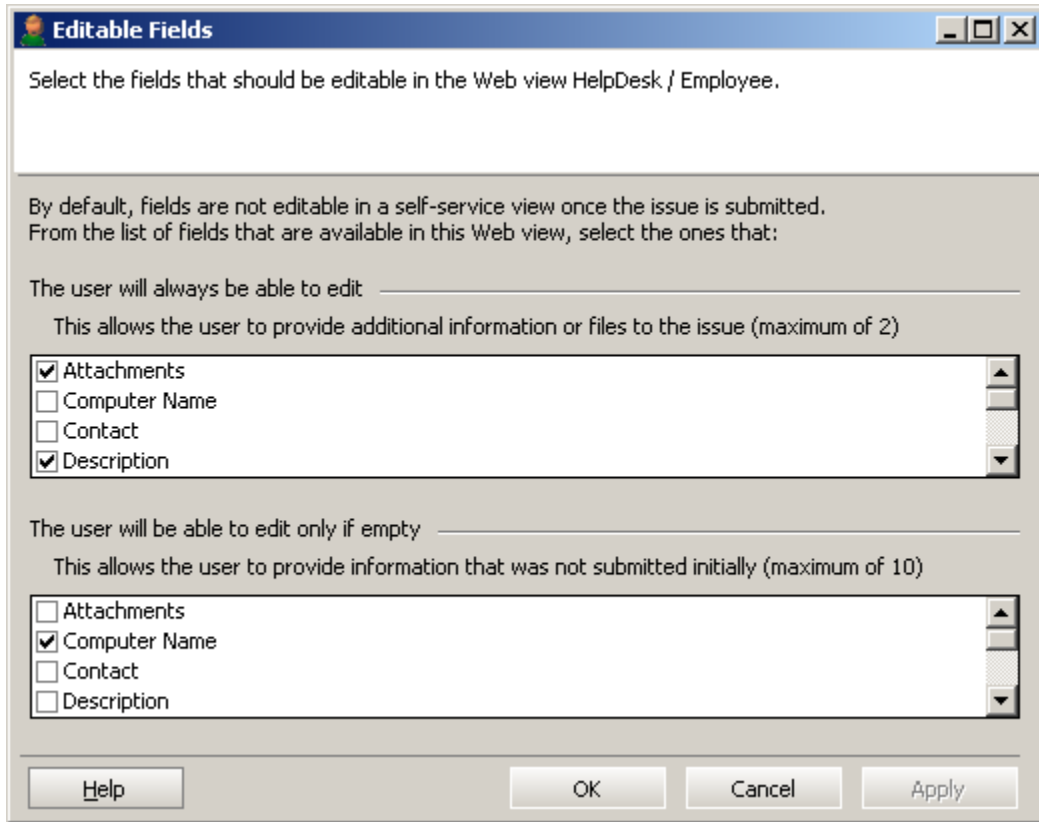
To specify which fields the user should be able to edit if the field is empty:

Click  beside the **View Type** box to open the Editable Fields dialog.

The fields that are exported to the Web view will be available in the **The user will be able to edit only if empty** list.



Select the fields that the user should be able to edit after their issue is saved, if the field is still empty (up to a maximum of 10 fields).

Click OK and generate your Web view.




Exporting Fields

To export fields:

- 1 In the shortcut bar, click **Fields** .
- 2 In the **Tab** list, click a tab (a tab is a group of related fields).
- 3 In the **Available** list, click a field and then click . This moves the field to the **Export To View** list, which lists the fields included in the Web view when it is generated.
- 4 Use  and  to change the order of the fields in the **Export to View** list. The order of the fields in the list determines the layout of the fields in the Web view.

Notes

- Click  to move all fields in the **Available** list to the **Export To View** list.
- Required fields are exported by default. You can remove the fields—just ignore the warning.
- The **Field** list in Ad-hoc Query editor lists exported fields only, plus the **Issue** field
- Layouts show only exported fields.

Related Topics

[Creating Web Views](#)

[Exporting Queries](#)

[Editing Field Attributes](#)

[About Adding Fields](#)

[Setting Default Values for Fields](#)



Exporting Queries

Queries control which issues a user can see in a Web view. For example, if **My Submitted Issues** is the only query available in a Web view, users can see only the issues they submitted.

To ensure that users cannot access any issues other than the ones found by the exported queries, you should hide the ad hoc query editor. The Ad-hoc Query editor allows users to see any issue (for example, by running a query like **Issue Number > 0**, which returns all issues).

In the **Queries** section, the **Available** box lists all the queries that you can export to the Web view. The **Export to View** box lists all the queries selected for export to the Web view.

To export queries:

- 1 In the shortcut bar, click **Queries** .
- 2 In the **Available** list, click a query.
- 3 Click  to move the query from the **Available** box to **Export To View**.

Notes

- To move all queries from **Available** to **Export To View**, click .

Related Topics

[Creating Web Views](#)


[Exporting Fields](#)

[About Queries](#)

Adding the Child Issues Tab

Web views can have a **Child Issues** tab that allows users to link one or more child issues to a parent issue.

To add the Child Issues tab:

1 In the shortcut bar, click **Fields** .

2 In the **Tab** list, click **Child Issues**.

3 In the **Available** list, click the **Child Issues** field and then click .

The **Child Issues** field is a special grid control that allows users to build a list of child issues.

4 If you want to allow users to control whether child issues can have a different Progress value than their parent, export the **Progress controlled by parent** field (**Details** tab).

By default, child issues have the same substate as their parent. Users can set **Progress controlled by parent** to **No** to override this default behavior.


5 Regenerate the Web view.

Editing Field Attributes

The fields on a Web view are arranged in a two-column layout inside an HTML table. The order of the fields is determined by the order in which they are listed in the **Export to View** list.

The appearance and layout of the fields can be customized through field attributes, which control options such as alignment, width, and height.

To edit field attributes:

- 1 In the shortcut bar, click **Fields** .
- 2 In the **Tab** list, click a tab. In the **Export to View** list, click a field.
- 3 Click **Attributes** to open the Attribute editor.
The Attribute editor displays the attributes for the selected field.
- 4 After you open the Attribute editor, you can edit the attributes for another field by clicking the field in the **Field Name** list.

Related Topics

[Using Field Variables](#)

[Setting Default Values for Fields](#)

[Adding Pop-up Editors](#)

[Aligning Fields](#)

[Automatically Updating Choice Lists](#)

[Changing Field Captions](#)

[Spanning Columns](#)

[Applying CSS Styles](#)

[Displaying Read-Only Fields](#)

[Inserting Custom HTML Code](#)

[Text Boxes](#)

[Multi-Choice Lists](#)

[Configuring Choice Lists](#)

[Linking User Details](#)

[Adding URL Buttons](#)

[Hiding Fields](#)

Using Field Variables

Field variables allow you to insert the name, value, or id of a field into an attribute. The field variables are particularly useful with the **Html code after control and URL** attributes.

Variable	Inserts
%fieldvalue%	The current value of the field. For choice lists, %fieldvalue% is the ID of the choice.
%fieldname%	The name assigned to the input control (for example, cbo_18_cboPriority).
%fieldid%	The numeric ID of the field (this is the nID of the field in tblDtsFields).

Related Topics

[Inserting Custom HTML Code](#)

[Adding URL Buttons](#)

Adding Pop-up Editors

A Memo field such as the **Detailed Description** field has an Editor attribute that controls how the content of the field is edited.

Value	Description
<None>	The Memo field is an editable text area in the Web view.
HTML	The contents of the Memo field are edited in a pop-up HTML editor.
Text	The contents of the Memo field are edited in a pop-up Text editor.

Aligning Fields

Alignment

Aligns a field (both the caption and the input control). Possible values are **Left**, **Right**, or **Center**. By default, all fields are left-aligned.

Contact: RIGHT	<None>
Substate: CENTER	
Severity: LEFT	

Vertical Alignment

Sets the vertical positioning of a field (both the caption and the input control). Possible values are: **Top**, **Middle**, and **Bottom**. The default is **Top**.

Contact: TOP	<None>
Substate: MIDDLE	
Priority: BOTTOM	

Related Topics

[Editing Field Attributes](#)

Automatically Updating Choice Lists

Automatically Update List

If **Yes**, the choice list is updated each time a user logs on to the Web view. To turn on the automatic update of choice lists, you must regenerate the view.

If **No**, the choice list is updated only when the Web view is regenerated.

Notes

Automatically updating a large number of choice lists may affect performance. You should automatically update only the choice lists that change frequently.

Related Topics

[Editing Field Attributes](#)

[Should you automatically update choice lists?](#)

[Generating Web Views](#)

Changing Field Captions

The **Caption** attribute specifies a text label for a field. Note that reports and the **Field** list in the Ad-hoc Query editor still use the original field name, not the value of the **Caption** attribute.

Spanning Columns

Set **Column Span** to **1** to have the field span a single column, or **2** to have the field span the entire width of the page.

To make a field span 2 columns, you must also set the **CSS Class** to **MemoFieldWidth**. Use the **SpanTwoWidthOne** class if you want a field to span two columns but still be one column wide (that is, be alone on a line).

For example, in the default HelpDesk Web view, the **Priority** field uses the **SpanTwoWidthOne** class. For example, in the default BugTrk / Customer view, the **How Found** field on the **Detail** tab uses the **SpanTwoWidthOne** class.

Related Topics

[Editing Field Attributes](#)

Applying CSS Styles

CSS Class

Name of a style class defined in the cascading style sheet (**CensusMain.css**) used by the Web view. This class is applied to the controls (for example, the <input> form element for a text box). By default, fields use the classes **ComboBoxWidth**, **MemoFieldWidth**, and **TextFieldWidth**. These classes set the width and border of the control. **ComboBoxWidth**, and **TextFieldWidth** set the width to one column, and **MemoFieldWidth** sets the width to two columns.

The CSS Class attribute does not apply to read-only/disabled fields. These fields use the **readOnlyStyle** class.

Displaying Read-Only Fields

You can display read-only fields as either text or as disabled controls.

Read-only field displayed as text



Read-only field displayed as a disabled control




In a read-only Web view, all fields are read-only. In normal and submit-only Web views, read-only fields are fields that have been disabled through the Field editor.

To set the default for all read-only fields in the Web view:

- 1 In the shortcut bar, click **Web View** .
- 2 Click  (opposite **Attributes**) to open the Web View Attributes dialog.
- 3 Set **Display All Read-Only Fields As Text** to **Yes** or **No**.

By default, this setting applies to all read-only fields in the Web view.

To override the default for a specific read-only field:

- 1 In the shortcut bar, click **Fields** .
- 2 In the **Tab** list, click the tab that contains the field.
- 3 In the **Export to View** list, click the field and then click **Attributes**.
- 4 Change **Display Read-Only Field As Text** to **No** or **Yes**.

When **Display Read-Only Field As Text** is set to **Default**, the field uses the value of the Web view attribute **Display All Read-Only Fields As Text**.

Notes

- If you display a read-only memo field as a disabled control, the scroll bar is disabled, so the user may not be able to see everything in the field.
- You must regenerate the Web view after you change the Web view attribute or the field attribute.

Related Topics

[Editing Field Attributes](#)

[Generating Web Views](#)

Width

Width in characters of a single-line text box, or width in pixels of a list box.

The CSS classes assigned to text boxes and list boxes override the **Width** attribute. These CSS classes (**TextBoxWidth** and **ComboBoxWidth**) specify the widths of the input controls.

Related Topics

[Applying CSS Styles](#)

Inserting Custom HTML Code

Html code before/after control

HTML inserted before and after the control in the generated HTML page. Must be a single line of text. For example, suppose you want to add a help icon that displays a tooltip.



A simple way to implement field-level tooltips is to put this HTML in the **Html code after control** attribute:

```

```

This inserts a help icon that displays a tooltip when a user points to the icon.

A more generic approach would be to write a javascript function in CustomCode.js that returns a string of HTML.

```
function getHelpIcon ( tooltip ) {
    var str;
    str = '';
    return str;
}
```

The **Html code after control** would then call this function to get the HTML:

```
<script type="text/javascript" language="javascript">document.write(
    parent.objCustomCode.getHelpIcon( 'Tooltip text' )
);
</script>
```

You must declare your function in CustomCode.js. Look for the public declarations at the bottom of the file, and add this line:

```
this.getHelpIcon = getHelpIcon;
```

Notes

In the Html code before/after control attributes, you can use the string **%fieldname%** to refer to the name of the control. (The name of a control is the value of the name attribute on the form element.) For example, you could pass %fieldname% into the getHelpIcon() function, which would then return the help for that field.

Related Topics

[Using Field Variables](#)

Adding URL Buttons

URL buttons open a new browser window and load the document specified by the **URL** attribute. A URL button is associated with a field, and can use the field value as part of the URL.

For example, suppose you wanted to record the ID number of a Microsoft KB article that explains how to resolve a problem.



To add a URL button that opens the specified KB article in a browser window, set the **URL** and **URL Button CSS** attributes as follows:

```
URL = http://support.microsoft.com  
      /default.aspx?scid=kb;en-us;%fieldvalue%
```

```
URL Button CSS = URLButton
```

In the **URL** attribute, %fieldvalue% is a placeholder for the KB article ID number entered in the field.

If you omit the http:// prefix from the URL, Vector HelpDesk automatically adds it when you generate the Web view.

The **URL Button CSS** attribute identifies the CSS classes used for the button. Vector HelpDesk includes several different URL button classes you can use:

 URLButton

 MailToButton

 RemoteControl

URL buttons always open a new browser window, even when you specify a URL like mailto:xsupport@company.com.

Related Topics

[Editing Field Attributes](#)

[Using Field Variables](#)

[Customizing URL Buttons](#)

Text Boxes

Number of Characters

Maximum number of characters per line in the text box.

Related Topics

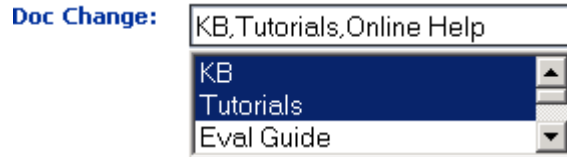
[Editing Field Attributes](#)

Multi-Choice Lists

Number of Visible Items

Number of items visible in a multi-choice list. Users can always see items that are outside the visible window by scrolling the list box.

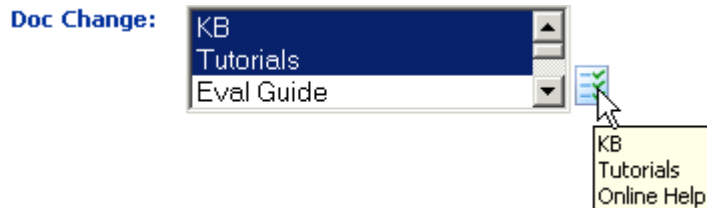
Show Selected Items In Text



Shows a comma-separated list of the selected items in a text box above the multi-choice list. This helps users see what items are selected.

Show Selected Items In Tooltip

Shows a comma-separated list of the selected items in a tooltip. This helps users see what items are selected in a multi-choice list.




Configuring Choice Lists

The tblUser table can contain a large range of entries. For example, a big organization can have several thousand users and contacts, whereas a smaller organization may have only a few tens of entries. Use the Select from dialog attribute to specify the method which support staff can use to make a selection from single- or multi-choice lists populated from the tblUser table.

To specify the type of choice list control you want to use:

- 1 In the Web View Editor, select the Web View that contains the fields you want to work with.
- 2 Select **Fields** in the shortcut bar.
- 3 Select a field you want to customize, and click the **Attributes** button. For example, to select the control type for the **Contact** field in the Console's **Overview** tab, select **Contact**.
- 4 Choose a control option:

To display the data in a search dialog, click the **Select from dialog** attribute and click **Yes**. A browse  button is displayed alongside the field to enable users to open the Search dialog. (Select from dialog = Yes is used by default.)

To display the data in a drop-down list, click the **Select from drop-down list** attribute and click **No**.

We recommend you select the **No** option only when the field can contain fewer than 100 entries as it can take several minutes to populate a large drop-down list.

- 5 Click **Close** to save your changes.

Related Topics

[Editing Field Attributes](#)

Linking User Details

When dealing with issues, support staff often need to request more information from users or ask them to perform checks on their computers. To help support staff contact users, you can configure HelpDesk to make user details available through a dialog linked to the **User**, **Contact** or **Company** fields.

To link to user details:

- 1 In the Web View Editor, select the Web View that contains the fields you want to work with.
- 2 Select **Fields** in the shortcut bar.
- 3 Select **User** and click the **Attributes** button.
- 4 Click the **Link to user details** attribute and click **Yes**.
- 5 Click **Close** to save your changes.

The contents of the field are underlined when users mouse over it in the Web View. This indicates a link to the contact details of the selected person.

Related Topics

[Editing Field Attributes](#)

Hiding Fields

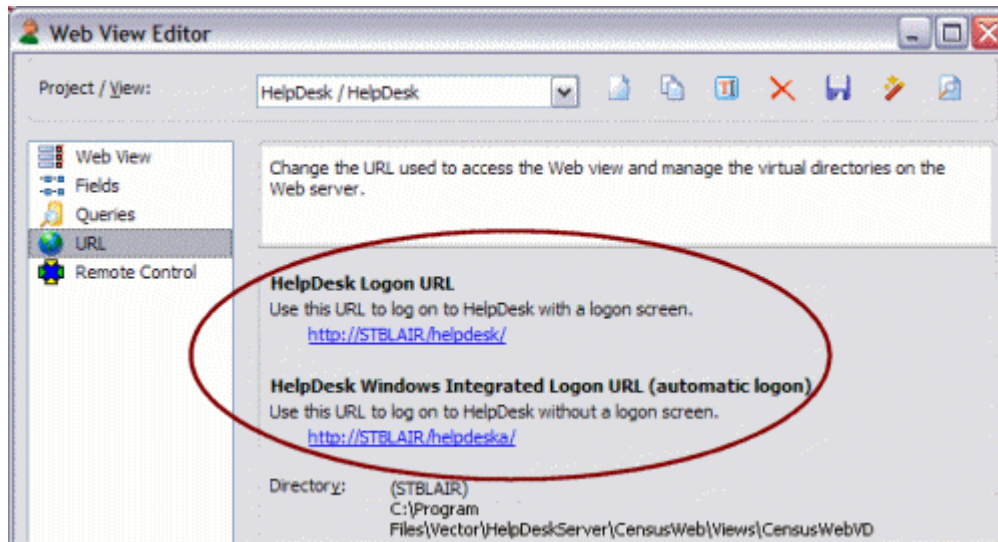
Setting **Visible** to **No** hides the field in the Web view. The field is still included in reports and listed in the Field list of the Ad-hoc Query editor.

Related Topics

[Editing Field Attributes](#)

Pointing Users to Web Views

The URLs for a normal or read-only Web view are displayed in the Web View Editor. The Vector HelpDesk Logon URL is for users with Vector HelpDesk users accounts. The Windows Integrated Logon URL is for users whose [Windows user accounts](#) have been imported into Vector HelpDesk.



The default page at the URL is **logon.asp**.

For Submit-only and Knowledge Base views, you have to add the **logon.asp** file name and a query string to the URL displayed in the Web View Editor. For example:

```
http://server/helpdesk/logon.asp?View=HelpDesk%2FReport%20Issue
http://server/helpdesk/logon.asp?View=HelpDesk%2FKB
http://server/census/logon.asp?View=BugTrk%2FSubmit%20Issue
http://server/census/logon.asp?View=BugTrk%2FKB
```

The query string (the part after the question mark) specifies the project and view:

```
View=<project>%2F<view>
```

%2F is the escape sequence for a forward slash (/). Spaces in the view name are replaced with the escape sequence %20.

Related Topics

[Changing URLs and Directories](#)

[Changing the Windows Account](#)

Changing URLs and Directories

A Web view is accessed through a URL like `//server/helpdesk`, where **server** is the name of the Web server computer, and **helpdesk** is the name of a virtual directory.



On a Web site hosted by Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS), a virtual directory is an alias (a short, descriptive name) that is mapped to a directory on the Web server.

The Web View Editor includes a Web View wizard to help you:



- Change the URL (for example, change `//nan/helpdesk` to `//nan/CallTracking`) by changing the virtual directory. Change the URL (for example, change `//nan/BugTrk` to `//nan/bugs`) by changing the virtual directory.
- Change the directory where the Web view is published.

There are two ways to change the URL. You can create a new virtual directory, or you can use an existing virtual directory.

To change the URL by creating a new virtual directory:

- 1 In the shortcut bar, click **URL** .
- 2 Click  to open the Web View Wizard and then click **Next**.
- 3 Click **Advanced**, click **Create a new URL and a new Directory**, and then click **Next**.
- 4 Type the name of your Web server and click **Next**.
- 5 In the **Web Site** list, click the Web site where you want to create the virtual directory.
- 6 In the **Virtual Directory** box, type the name of the new virtual directory.
- 7 In the **Path** box, select the directory where you want to put the generated Web view files.
- 8 If you need to change the user account used for anonymous access to the virtual directory, select the **Show advanced options** check box.
- 9 Click **Next** and then click **Finish**.



To change the URL by using a different virtual directory:

- 1 In the shortcut bar, click **URL** .
- 2 Click  to open the Web View Wizard and then click **Next**.
- 3 Click **Use existing URL** and click **Next**.
- 4 In the **Web Site** list, click the Web site that contains the virtual directory you want to use.
- 5 In the **Virtual Directory** list, click the virtual directory you want to use.

By default, the **Virtual Directory** list contains only the virtual directories used by HelpDesk Web views. To show all the available virtual directories, select the **Show all virtual directories from IIS** check box.

- 6 Click **Next** and then click **Finish**.

To change the directory:

- 1 In the shortcut bar, click **URL** .
- 2 Click  to open the **Web View Wizard** and then click **Next**.
- 3 Click **Advanced**, click **Update existing virtual directory**, and then click **Next**.
- 4 Click **Next** and then click **Next** again.

This assumes you want to change just the directory, not the Web server, Web site, or virtual directory.

- 5 In the **Path** box, select the new directory where you want to put the generated Web view files.
- 6 If you need to change the user account used for anonymous access to the virtual directory, select the **Show**

advanced options check box.

7 Click **Next** and then click **Finish**.

Changing the Windows Account

Vector HelpDesk needs a Windows domain account to use for:

- Anonymous access to the virtual directories on the Web server.
Anonymous access is required to run any Web view or HelpDesk Web Admin, which are all stored in virtual directories on the Web server.
- Access to Vector HelpDesk databases in a distributed configuration, where the databases are not on the Web server.
- Access to attachments, which may be stored on a different computer than the Web server.
- Access to Vector Asset Management site databases



By default, Vector HelpDesk uses the CensusUser account, which is created when you install Vector HelpDesk. The default password for the CensusUser account is nd5kvmWJ.

The CensusUser account is a Windows domain account.

Notes

If you change the password for the CensusUser account, or delete the user account and use another one, you must update the virtual directories in the Internet Service Manager (Windows NT) or Internet Services Manager (Windows 2003, 2000, XP).

To change the Windows account used for anonymous access to a virtual directory:

- 1 Open the Web View editor. In the shortcut bar, click **URL** .
- 2 Click  to open the Web View Wizard and then click **Next**.
- 3 Click **Advanced**, click **Update existing virtual directory**, and click **Next**.
- 4 Click **Next** until you get to the Virtual Directory Properties dialog.
- 5 Select the **Show Advanced Options** check box.
- 6 In the **User Name** box, enter the name of the user account.
Click **Browse** to locate a domain user account.
- 7 In the **Password** box, type the user account password.

You can also use HelpDesk Admin to change the Windows account.

To change the Windows account used by Vector HelpDesk:

- 1 Open HelpDesk Admin.
- 2 On the **Tools** menu, click **Windows Account**.
- 3 Enter the name and password of the domain user account you want to use.

This user account is used for anonymous access by all subsequent Web views you generate.

Notes


When you change the user account used for anonymous access with the Web View Editor or HelpDesk Web Admin (Notifications tab), all required permissions and rights are automatically set.

Related Topics

[Windows Permissions](#)

Setting Default Values

To set default values for a Web view:

- 1 Log on to the Web view.
- 2 In the Web view toolbar, click **Defaults** .
- 3 In the Default Values dialog, set the field values you want to use as defaults for new issues.
- 4 Click **Apply**.

This creates a file named MqDefaultValues.js in the folder

```
CensusWebVD\<<project>_<view>\Users\<<logon-name>
```

where <logon-name> is the name you used to log on to the Web view.

- 5 Copy the file

```
\CensusWebVD\<<project>_<view>\Users\<<logon-name>\MqDefaultValues.js
```

to

```
\CensusWebVD\<<project>_<view>\Users\Users\MqDefaultValues.js
```

The folder Users\Users applies to all users that log on to the Web view.

- 6 Copy Users\Users\MqDefaultValues.js to the CustomizedFiles folder.

For example, if you want the default values to apply to all Web views of the HelpDesk project, copy MqDefaultValues.js to:

```
CUSTOMIZEDFILES\#Project#HelpDesk\#AllWebViews#\Users\Users
```

If you want the default values to apply only to the HelpDesk_HelpDesk view, copy MqDefaultValues.js to:

```
CUSTOMIZEDFILES\#Project#HelpDesk\#WebView#HelpDesk_HelpDesk\Users\Users
```

Notes

- Users can override these default values by setting their own defaults.
- You can remove the **Defaults** button from Web views by disabling the Default Value Editor feature.

Templates and the CustomizedFiles Folder

The files that make up a Web view (such as .JS, .CSS, .HTML, and .ASP files) are generated from templates. If you edit the original templates, your customizations apply to all Web views. In addition, if you edit the generated files for a Web view, you must reapply your changes every time you generate the view.

To customize specific Web views without editing the generated files, you put your customized files in a special **CustomizedFiles** folder. Each time you generate the view, the Web View Editor copies your customized files from the **CustomizedFiles** folder into the view.

Related Topics

[Customizing Web Views](#)

[Customizing Shared Web View Files](#)

[Overriding Customizations](#)

Customizing Web View Files

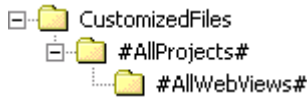
To customize Web view files:

- 1 In the **<HelpDeskServer>\CensusWeb** folder, create a **CustomizedFiles** folder.

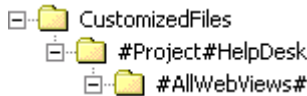
<HelpDeskServer> represents the folder where your HelpDesk Server is installed.

- 2 In the **CustomizedFiles** folder, create a folder structure to hold the customized files.

To customize files for all Web views of all projects, create this folder structure:

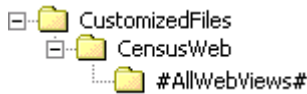


To customize files for all Web views of a specific project, create a folder structure like this:



and replace **helpdesk** with the name of the project.

To customize files for all Web views accessed through a given URL, create a folder structure like this:

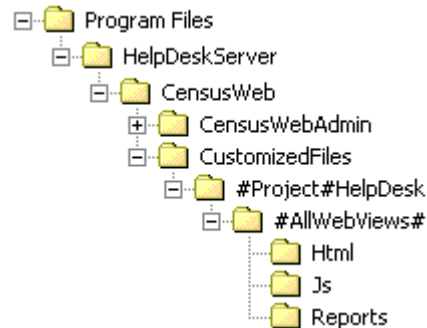


and replace **CensusWeb** with the last part of the URL. (For example, if the actual URL is **http://SERVER/helpdesk**, replace **CensusWeb** with **HelpDesk**).

Use this approach if you generate Web views outside the HelpDeskServer folder.

- 3 Copy the files you want to customize from the view into the **CustomizedFiles** folder.

You must recreate the same folder structure. For example, if you want to customize files in the **HTML**, **JS**, and **Reports** folders of Web views of the **HelpDesk** project, you must create this folder structure:



- 4 Customize the files and generate the view.

Related Topics

[Templates and the CustomizedFiles Folder](#)

[Customizing Shared Web View Files](#)

[Overriding Customizations](#)

Customizing Shared Web View Files

You can also customize the files that are shared by Web views accessed through the same URL. These are the files found in the **CensusWebVD** folder, such as **logon.asp**.

To customize the files in CensusWebVD for all Web views:

Put the files in the folder

CustomizedFiles\#AllProjects#

-or-

CustomizedFiles\

To customize files for all Web views accessed through a given URL:

Put the files in the folder

CustomizedFiles\

For example, if the URL is //server/helpdesk, then put the customized files in a folder named CustomizedFiles\helpdesk.

Use this approach if you generate Web views outside of the HelpDeskServer folder.

Related Topics

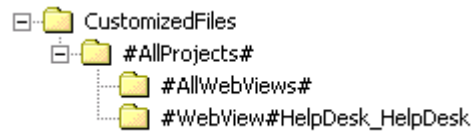
[Templates and the CustomizedFiles Folder](#)

[Customizing Web Views](#)

[Overriding Customizations](#)

Overriding Customizations

To override the customizations in **#AllWebViews#** for a given Web view, you can create a **#WebView#<project>_<view>** folder. For example:



The files in **#WebView#HelpDesk_HelpDesk** override all **#AllWebViews#** customizations.

You can create a **#WebView#<project>_<web view>** folder in any of the three customization folders (**#AllProjects#**, **#Project#<project>**, and **CensusWeb**).

Related Topics

[Templates and the CustomizedFiles Folder](#)

[Customizing Web Views](#)

[Customizing Shared Web View Files](#)

Customizing the Web View Interface

You can customize most of the HTML and ASP pages that make up a Web view. If you edit the templates, make sure to backup the original files before you begin your customization.

CensusMain.css

Style sheet for a Web view. The **normalfield**, **requiredfield**, and **disabledfield** classes define the appearance of the fields.

TmplCensusMain.htm

Defines the frame structure for the frames that make up the Web view page. You can change the size and position of each frame, add and remove scrollbars, and set the frame border size.

TmplToolbar.htm

Defines the Web view toolbar.

TmplSummaryList.htm

Defines the Summary List. **You cannot customize this page.**

TmplSQE.htm

Defines the Ad-hoc Query Editor.

Tabs.asp

Defines the layout of the tab navigation buttons.

TmplCmdBar.htm

Contains the navigation controls.

When editing these files, do not change references to file names, the <WC@ ... > tags, or any of the Javascript code.

Changing the Date and Time Formats for Web Views

The format of the dates and times entered and displayed in a Web view are controlled by the **Regional Settings** of the Web server, not the **Regional Settings** of the local computer.

Web views use the short date format.

Microsoft Windows NT 4.0

When no one is logged on to the Web server, the Date/Time formats (and other Regional Settings) come from the system default settings (found in the **Locale.nls** file for the default locale). You can change the system default settings by clicking **Set Default** in the **Regional Settings** section of **Control Panel**.

After you change the default locale, restart the computer. Note that changing the default locale changes all regional settings, not just the date and time formats. There is no way to modify a specific setting within the locale.

When someone is logged on to the computer, the Date/Time formats come from the user's Regional Settings. These settings are read from the user profile settings in the **HKEY_CURRENT_USER/Control Panel/International** registry key. You can change this setting in the **Regional Settings** section of **Control Panel**, after which you must restart the computer.

Microsoft Windows 2000 and XP

The Date/Time formats come from system default settings in the **HKEY_USERS/.Default/Control Panel/International** registry key. This key contains the **Regional Settings** options specified during the operating system installation. You must edit the registry to change these default system settings, and you may need to restart your Web server for the changes to take effect.

Administering Vector HelpDesk on the Web

HelpDesk Web Admin is a Web-based administration tool that allows you to:

- Add and edit users and contacts.
- Define workflow rules.
- Create new tabs.
- Set up choice fields.
- Enable e-mail notifications.
- Migrate projects to SQL Server and move projects to different SQL Server computers.
- Move attachments to a different computer.
- Integrate Vector InventoryLink VSS databases to Vector HelpDesk projects.

Logging On

You can log on to HelpDesk Web Admin directly from the Web View Editor, using the same logon account you used for the Web View Editor.

To log on to HelpDesk Web Admin

Do one of the following:

- In your Web browser, go to **//server/helpdeskadmin**, where server is the name of your Web server.
- In HelpDesk Admin, click **Tools > Web > Web Admin**.
- At the Web server, click **Start > Programs > Vector > HelpDesk > HelpDesk Web AdminStart > Programs > Vector > HelpDesk > > HelpDesk Web Admin**.
- In the Web View editor, click **Admin** and then click **Log On**.

Generating HelpDesk Web Admin

When you install the HelpDesk Web Server, the setup program generates a copy of HelpDesk Web Admin. If necessary, you can generate another copy of HelpDesk Web Admin. For example, you may want to change the URL used to access HelpDesk Web Admin.

To generate HelpDesk Web Admin:

- 1** In the Web View editor, click **Admin**.
- 2** If required, **change** the URL and directory for HelpDesk Web Admin.
- 3** Click **OK**.

Windows Permissions

When you log on to HelpDesk Web Admin, it uses your Windows credentials to run tasks if you are a member of the CensusAdminsGroup group or the local Administrators group on the HelpDesk Server computer. Otherwise, HelpDesk Web Admin runs tasks as CensusUser.

Members of the CensusAdminsGroup group (or of the local Administrators group on the HelpDesk Server computer) have the required permissions to perform any task with HelpDesk Web Admin. The CensusUser account, on the other hand, cannot perform IIS-related tasks such as unloading virtual directories (when logging off users), and may not be able to relocate databases to other computers.

During installation, the Setup program creates the CensusAdminsGroup group and adds all members of the domain Administrators group to the CensusAdminsGroup group. Setup also adds the CensusAdminsGroup to the local Administrators group on the HelpDesk Server computer. The purpose of the CensusAdminsGroup is to control access to Web Admin.

Chapter 13 - Maintaining Your HelpDesk Systems

Relocating Databases to SQL Server

In addition to Jet/MSAccess, Vector HelpDesk also supports Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Desktop Engine (MSDE 2000).

SQL Server is tuned to deliver the same performance as SQL Server for up to five concurrent users, and supports up to 2 GB per database. A single MSDE server can support multiple MSDE databases, each containing up to the 2-GB limit. For more users, or when you need more data storage, you should use SQL Server or SQL Server Enterprise Edition for optimal performance and a higher level of scalability.

You can relocate (migrate) databases from Jet/MSAccess to SQL Server, or from one SQL Server to another. To relocate databases to SQL Server, you *must* have a license for Vector HelpDesk SQL Enabled.

There are two types of databases you can relocate:

- Global databases are the databases shared by all projects: the users database (users.mdb), the Web views database (censusweb.mdb), and the licenses databases (licenses.mdb).
- Project databases contain issues and project definitions (such as the definitions of fields, queries, and reports).

To relocate databases to SQL Server:

1 Log on to HelpDesk Web Admin:

- In HelpDesk Admin, click **Tools > Relocate > Databases** to log on to HelpDesk Web Admin, where you can use the **Relocation** tab to relocate databases to SQL Server.
- In your Web browser, go to `//server/helpdeskadmin`, where **server** is the name of your Web server.

2 On the **Relocation** tab, under **Databases to relocate**, select the databases you want to relocate.

3 In the **Relocate databases to this SQL Server** list, click the computer to which you want to relocate the databases. In the **Relocate databases to this SQL Server** list, click the Web server computer. MSDE 2000 databases must be on the same computer as Vector HelpDesk.

To relocate to a SQL Server instance, click **Add a SQL Server** to this list and then type the instance name using the syntax `<computer name>\<instance name>`.

4 In the **New location for database files** box, enter the name of a folder on the Server where the database files (*.mdf, *.ldf) can be stored.

The new location must be the path as seen from the Web server. If the SQL Server is in a different computer, enter a UNC., otherwise, enter a local path.

5 Click **Apply** to relocate the databases.

6 During the relocation, you may be prompted for the password for the **sa** SQL Server login account. Vector HelpDesk needs the password so it can initialize the SQL Server.

7 After the databases are relocated, regenerate your Web views.

If you relocated the global databases, regenerate all Web views. If you relocated project databases, regenerate the Web views of the relocated projects.

Notes

- We recommend that all databases be stored on the same SQL Server computer. This improves performance by reducing the amount of data sent over the network.
- When relocating databases from one SQL Server to another, the locations of the physical data files (.mdf,.ldf) on both the source and target computers must be accessible from the Web server. Also, the user running HelpDesk Web Admin must have full permission to move and create files on the locations .
- Relocating databases logs off users and prevent users from logging on, so choose a time when there is little or no activity on Vector HelpDesk.
- When you relocate a database to SQL Server, Vector HelpDesk creates a SQL Server database with one data file and one log file. After the database is created and is accessible in SQL Server, database administrators can add more files or configure the database as required.
- Vector HelpDesk creates a SQL Server login account named **censusapplication**, which is used to connect to the SQL Server.

Related Topics

[Troubleshooting Relocation](#)

[Generating Web Views](#)

[Relocating Attachments](#)

[Editing Project Properties](#)

[Troubleshooting HelpDesk Web Admin](#)

[Releasing Databases](#)

Troubleshooting Relocations

If HelpDesk Web Admin cannot contact or initialize the SQL Server during relocation:

- Check the SQL Server is running.
- Check the SQL Server is configured to use SQL Server and Windows authentication (Mixed Mode authentication).
- Verify that the SQL Server login account **sa** exists, is not disabled, and has permissions to log into the master database in the SQL Server. **sa** must be system administrator in SQL Server.
- Stop any antivirus software that is running on the SQL Server computer or the Web server computer.
- Verify that the HelpDesk Web Server computer and the SQL Server computer can communicate through the network (for example, use Ping to test connectivity).
- Try using the IP address instead of the computer name to identify the SQL Server computer.
- To relocate to a SQL Server instance, click **Add a SQL Server to this list** and then type the instance name using the syntax <computer name>\<instance name>.
- Verify that both the SQL Server and the Web server are using the same protocol (by default, TCP/IP). To do this, use the SQL Server Server Network Utility on the SQL Server computer, and the SQL Server Client Network Utility on the Web server.

Related Topics

[Relocating Databases to SQL Server](#)

[Releasing Databases](#)

Relocating Attachments

When users upload attachments, the attachments are stored on the Web server. For example, the files attached to issue #3 in the HelpDesk project are stored in the folder

```
HelpDeskServer\helpdesk\Data\Attachments
```

For security purposes, you may want to move the attachments to a separate file server.

To relocate attachments:

- 1 In HelpDesk Admin, click **Tools > Relocate > Attachments**.

This logs you on to HelpDesk Web Admin, where you can use the **Relocation** tab to move (relocate) attachments.

- 2 In HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Relocation** tab and then click **Relocate Attachments**.

- 3 Under **Relocate the attachments for these projects**, select the projects whose attachments you want to move.

- 4 In the **New location for attachments** box, type or paste the name of an existing folder on another computer.

- The Windows account (by default, CensusUser) must have (full) permissions on the new location.
- The new location must be a UNC path (for example, \\sharename\Attachments) that the Web server can access.
- The new location is the root folder where Vector HelpDesk creates folders to store the attachments. For example, if the new location is

```
//fileserver/helpdeskWeb
```

then attachments to the HelpDesk project are stored in

```
//fileserver/HelpDeskWeb/helpdesk/Data/Attachments
```

If you created your own attachment field, then attachments are stored in

```
//fileserver/helpdeskWeb/helpdesk/Data/<fieldname>
```

- 5 Click **Apply** to relocate the attachments.

- 6 After the attachments are relocated, regenerate the Web views of the projects whose attachments were relocated.

Notes

Relocating attachments logs off users and prevent them from logging on, so choose a time when there is little or no activity on Vector HelpDesk.

Related Topics

[Relocating Databases to SQL Server](#)

[Generating Web Views](#)

[Editing Project Properties](#)

[Troubleshooting HelpDesk Web Admin](#)

[Changing the Windows Account](#)

[Releasing Databases](#)

Deleting Issues

Using HelpDesk Admin, you can delete specific issues or a range of issues from a project.

To delete issues:

- 1** In HelpDesk Admin, click **Delete Issues** on the **Project** menu.
- 2** In the **Issues to delete** box, type the issue numbers you want to delete.
You can type a specific issue number, a comma-separated list of issue numbers (for example: 1, 5, 7), or a range (for example, 1-25).
- 3** If you want to reuse the issue numbers of deleted issues, select the **Recycle Issue Numbers** check box.
Recycled issue numbers are assigned to new issues.

About the Logons Editor

HelpDesk Admin includes a Logons editor (on the **Tools** menu) that lists all users logged on to Web views, HelpDesk Admin, HelpDesk Web Admin, and the Web View Editor.

The Logons editor displays the following information for each logon session:

Name

Logon name of the user.

Date/Time

Date and time that the user logged on.

Workstation

The user's IP address or computer name.

Project

If the user is logged on to a Web view, the name of the project is displayed.

Virtual Directory

If the user is logged on to a Web view, the virtual directory is displayed. The virtual directory is the final part of the URL used to access the Web view. For example, if the virtual directory is named **helpdesk**, then the URL is **http://server/helpdesk**. You can use the Web View Editor to determine which views are at the specified URL.

Virtual directories such as helpdesk00, helpdesk01, and helpdesk02 are all accessed through the //server/helpdesk URL.

Application

The component you want to work with. For example: Web View, Web View Editor, Admin, or Web Admin.

Related Topics

[Logging Off Users](#)

[Releasing Databases](#)

Logging Off Users

To log off a specific user:

- 1 On the **Tools** menu, click **Logons Editor**.
- 2 In the list of users, click a user.
- 3 Click **Log Off**.

To log off all users:

- 1 On the **Tools** menu, click **Logons Editor**.
- 2 Click **Log Off All**.

Before logging off a user, a Web view displays a message telling the user that Vector HelpDesk is shutting down. You can give users a bit more time by sending an immediate message. To do this, set the **Send immediate shutdown message** project option to **Yes**.

Related Topics

[About the Logons Editor](#)

[Logging Off Users](#)

Setting the Monitor Interval

The Monitor Interval option (**Tools>Options**) controls how long (in seconds) Vector HelpDesk waits before:

- Checking for messages from a Web view
- Checking for user activity in a Web view
- Terminating a user session when logging off users.

The default interval is 60 seconds. If your Web server is on a slow Internet connection and you want to reduce network traffic, you can increase the monitor interval. Too large an interval, however, affects the time administrators have to wait when performing an action that involves logging off users.

About the Repair and Compact Tool

HelpDesk Admin includes a tool for repairing and compacting Microsoft Access database files. This tool is available from the **Tools** menu (**Repair** and **Compact**), but to repair and compact project database files, you must select a project first.

Related Topics

[About the Database Files](#)

[Compacting Database Files](#)

[Repairing Damaged Database Files](#)

About the Database Files

The Repair and Compact dialog displays a list of databases and their locations. The list includes both common databases (databases shared by all projects) and project-specific databases. Note that you cannot repair and compact SQL Server databases.

Project-specific databases:

Issue database	.dat (Jet/Access) _DAT (SQL Server)
Project definitions	def (Jet/Access) _DEF (SQL Server)
Temporary database used by HelpDesk Admin	.usr (Jet/Access)

Databases shared by all projects:

Web view definitions	censusweb.mdb (Jet/Access) CENSUSWEB_MDB (SQL Server)
User and contact information	users.mdb (Jet/Access) USERS_MDB (SQL Server)
Licenses	Licenses.mdb (Jet/Access) LICENSES_MDB (SQL Server)

Related Topics

[About the Repair and Compact Tool](#)

[Compacting Database Files](#)

[Repairing Damaged Database Files](#)

Compacting Database Files

Compacting optimizes the performance of Microsoft Access databases and can help prevent data corruption. If you make frequent changes in a database, parts of the database may become fragmented. We strongly recommend that you periodically repair and compact your databases.

To compact database files:

- 1 In the **Project** list, click a project.
- 2 In the **Tools** menu, click **Repair and Compact**.
- 3 In the Repair and Compact dialog, select the database files you want to compact.

Note that you cannot repair and compact SQL Server databases with this tool.

Related Topics

[About the Repair and Compact Tool](#)

[About the Database Files](#)

[Repairing Damaged Database Files](#)

Repairing Damaged Database Files

Repairing files allows you to recover corrupted or damaged Microsoft Access databases.

To repair a database file:

- 1 Make a backup of the damaged database file.
- 2 Delete the .ldb file if it is present. (You must close the corresponding database file before you delete the .ldb file.)
- 3 If the database file is project-specific, click a project in the **Project** list.
- 4 In the **Tools** menu, click **Repair and Compact**, and then select the files you want to repair.
- 5 Click **Start** to repair and compact on the selected files.

Related Topics

[About the Repair and Compact Tool](#)

[About the Database Files](#)

[Compacting Database Files](#)

Running Security Repair

The Security Repair utility program repairs and compacts **CenSys.mdw**. **CenSys.mdw** is the system workgroup file that stores security settings such as user group permissions and passwords.

CenSys.mdw may become bloated and stop working. Symptoms include changes in user permissions, such as the inability to log on, or an increase in file size (normal file size is around 160 KB).

Security Repair works on the copy of **CenSys.mdw** found in the local HelpDeskTools folder. This prevents users from accidentally running the program on the **CenSys.mdw** on the database server.

To repair and compact CenSys.mdw:

- 1 Make sure no one is editing users, groups, or passwords.
- 2 Copy **CenSys.mdw** from the **HelpDeskServer** folder to the HelpDeskTools folder.
- 3 On the Start menu, click **Programs > Vector > HelpDesk > Security Repair**.click **Programs > Vector HelpDesk > HelpDesk Tools > Security Repair**.
- 4 Copy **CenSys.mdw** back to the **HelpDeskServer** folder.

About the Integrity Editor

The Integrity editor (available from the **Tools** menu) allows you to remove database locks and validate the integrity of your databases. The integrity tasks apply to both SQL Server and Microsoft Access databases.

Related Topics

[Remove Locks](#)

[Validate Integrity of Fields](#)

[Validate Relationships](#)

[Validate Integrity of Issues](#)

Remove Locks

Locks on Project Definitions

Removes locks on project definitions, such as reports, queries, fields, and sorts.

If the locked by another user message is displayed when you try to use HelpDesk Admin, run the **Remove Locks** task to remove the locks.

Locks on Users and Logon Sessions

Removes locks on users and logon sessions. Users are locked while someone is editing a record in the users database (the users.mdb file or, in SQL Server, the **USERS_MDB** database).

Sessions shown in the Logons editor can be locked. For example, you may not be able to remove a logon that is several weeks old because it is locked. Run **Remove Locks** to unlock the logon.

Related Topics

[About the Logons Editor](#)

[Logging Off Users](#)

[Releasing Databases](#)

[About the Integrity Editor](#)

[Validate Integrity of Fields](#)

[Validate Relationships](#)

[Validate Integrity of Issues](#)

Validate Integrity of Fields

This task verifies that the issue database and the project definition database are synchronized and have the same set of fields. The task also checks primary keys and indexes.

For example, suppose your issue database is damaged and cannot be repaired, and that your backup of the issue database is not synchronized with the current project definitions database (the definitions database has new fields that are not in the backup issue database). By running the **Validate Integrity of Fields** task, you can synchronize the backup issue database with the current project definitions database.

Validate Relationships

This task verifies that built-in related fields are set correctly in the issue database. In the HelpDesk project, the only [built-in related fields](#) are **State** and **Progress**.

Validate Relationships does not apply to field relationships created with the Workflow editor.

Related Topics

[About the Integrity Editor](#)

[Remove Locks](#)

[Validate Integrity of Fields](#)

[Validate Integrity of Issues](#)

Validate Integrity of Issues

This task verifies that the issue database and the revision history are in-sync, by checking the revision numbers stored in the different tables of the database.

Related Topics

[About the Integrity Editor](#)

[Remove Locks](#)

[Validate Integrity of Fields](#)

[Validate Relationships](#)

Enabling Auto Repair

If you have problems running HelpDesk Admin, use the **Enable Auto Repair** option on the **Tools** menu.

Enable Auto Repair tries to repair HelpDesk Admin by fixing broken references, linking tables, and recreating objects.

To turn on auto-repair, click **Enable Auto Repair** in the **Tools** menu, then exit HelpDesk Admin and log back on. While auto-repair is turned on, HelpDesk Admin runs in repair mode, which may be slower than normal mode.

To turn off auto-repair, click **Enable Auto Repair** again.

Entering Your License Information

During installation, you must enter the Vector HelpDesk Access Enabled license key. It enables the Access run time library used by the HelpDesk Admin tools.

Evaluation licenses allow you to use Vector HelpDesk for a specified period of time. At the end of that period, you can no longer run Vector HelpDesk unless you provide a valid license key.

Concurrent licenses are permanent licenses that allow a specified number of users to use Vector HelpDesk simultaneously. With concurrent licensing, you only need licenses for the maximum number of simultaneous users. For example, if you have 30 users who need access to Vector HelpDesk, but no more than 20 log on at the same time, you need only 20 licenses. When all 20 licenses are in use, no additional users can log on until someone logs off.

Named licenses are per-user licenses. Each license is dedicated to a specific user. Vector HelpDesk automatically assigns named licenses to users as you create and disable user accounts. With named licensing, you cannot create more users than named licenses (for example, if you have five named licenses, then you can have at most five user).


To check the number of available named licenses, log on to HelpDesk Admin and click **Tools > Licenses**.

Entering License Keys

When you receive a new license key, or when you want to enable the SQL Server functionality of Vector HelpDesk SQL Enabled, use HelpDesk Admin to enter your license key.

Vector HelpDesk SQL Enabled requires both the Access Enabled and the SQL Enabled license keys. The Access Enabled license key is the base license that specifies the number of concurrent-use licenses. The SQL Enabled license key enables SQL Server support.

To enter your license key:

- 1 Log on to HelpDesk Admin.
- 2 On the **Tools** menu, click **Licenses**.
- 3 In the **Product** list, click a product. Select:
 - **Access Enabled** to enter a Vector HelpDesk Access Enabled license key.
 - **SQL Enabled** to enter a Vector HelpDesk SQL Enabled license key.
- 4 Click , enter your license key, and click **Apply**.

Number of Licenses

Shows how many users can run Vector HelpDesk concurrently. The Access Enabled license key determines the number of concurrent users (to see the number of concurrent users, click **Access Enabled** in the **Product** list).

License Type

Evaluation licenses are temporary licenses that have an expiration date. **Concurrent** licenses are permanent licenses that allow a specified number of users to use Vector HelpDesk simultaneously.

Expiration Date

Shows the date at which evaluation licenses expire and Vector HelpDesk stops working.

Releasing Databases

Some Vector HelpDesk administrative tasks start a shutdown process. Examples of such tasks include relocating databases, creating projects, applying changes in the Field Editor, generating Web views, running integrity tasks, and repairing and compacting databases.

The shutdown process logs off users and releases databases. If you see a Still releasing databases message during the shutdown process, you can:

- Click **Cancel** to stop trying to release the databases, and start logging off users. Do this only if you are sure that no one is using the databases.
- Try to manually release the databases and then click **OK**. To release the databases:
 - Unload the virtual directories used by Vector HelpDesk.
 - Stop the Mq Issue Agent service.
 - Exit all Vector HelpDesk programs.
 - Exit any programs (such as Microsoft Access or SQL Server Enterprise Manager) that may be accessing the databases.

Note that if you set the option **Tools > Options > Always verify locked databases** to **No**, Vector HelpDesk does not try to release databases during the shutdown process. In general, setting **Always verify locked databases** to **No** is not recommended, unless you know there is a process that regularly accesses the databases but does not affect Vector HelpDesk.

Related Topics

[About the Logons Editor](#)

[Logging Off Users](#)

[Troubleshooting HelpDesk Web Admin](#)

About Backing Up

You should regularly back up your Vector HelpDesk databases. Besides backing up all the issue data entered into the system, you should also (though perhaps less frequently) back up the files and databases that define your projects and Web views.

Backing Up Vector HelpDesk Access Enabled

By default, Access Enabled databases use the Jet/Access database engine, and are located in the **HelpDeskServer** folder on Web server. To back up the Jet/Access databases, you just have to back up the databases files. By default, Access Enabled databases use the Jet/Access database engine, and are located in the HelpDesk Server folder on Web server. To back up the Jet/Access databases, back up the databases files.

To back up MSDE 2000 databases:

- If you have Microsoft Access 2000, you can use the BACKUP command in the Database Utilities menu of an Access project to back up an MSDE database.
- If SQL Client Tools are installed, you can use SQL Enterprise Manager to back up an MSDE database.
- If you don't have Microsoft Access 2000 or the SQL Client Tools, then you can use the Transact-SQL BACKUP DATABASE statement, and run Osql.exe (a command-line Query tool).

See Q241397 in the Microsoft Knowledge Base.

Backing Up Vector HelpDesk SQL Enabled

In Vector HelpDesk SQL Enabled, most Access databases can be migrated to SQL Server. After migration, the databases are located in an admin-specified folder on a SQL Server computer, which may or may not be the same computer as the Web server

To back up SQL Server databases, you can use the SQL Server backup functionality to do incremental or complete backups of the databases.

Locating databases

By default, all databases are stored in the **HelpDeskServer** folder on your Web server. However, the databases can be relocated to different folders on different computers. For example, the databases may be relocated to a separate SQL Server computer.

To locate the databases, log on to HelpDesk Web Admin and go to the **Relocation** tab.

Attachments

By default, attachments are stored on the Web server. For example, the files attached to issue #3 in the project are stored in the folder

```
HelpDeskServer\helpdesk\Data\Attachments\3
```

Attachments may be relocated to a separate file server. To check the location of the attachments, log on to HelpDesk Web Admin, go to the **Relocation** tab, and click **Relocate Attachments**.

Web views

By default, Web views are stored on the Web server in the **HelpDeskServer** folder:

```
HelpDeskServer\CensusWeb\Views\CensusWebVD\
```

To check the location of your Web views, log on to the Web View Editor and in the shortcut bar click **URL**.

Related Topics

[Backing Up Issues](#)

[Backing Up Projects](#)

[Backing Up the Users Database](#)

[Backing Up System Files](#)

[Backing Up Web Views](#)

[Automatic Backups](#)

[Performing Hot Backups](#)

[Restoring Backups](#)

Backing Up Issues

To back up the issue data stored in a project, you need to back up:

- The issue database, which stores all the issue information entered.
- The files attached to issues. These files are stored outside of the issue database, in the file system.

What to backup

All issue information (except for attached files) is stored in the issue database.

Database engine	Database
Jet/MSAccess	<project>01.dat
SQL Server	<project>01_DAT

By default, attachments are stored in the project folder (for example, C:\Program Files\Vector\HelpDeskServer\helpdesk\Data\Attachments). Note that the attachments may be stored in a different folder or on a different computer.

Notes

- To check the location of the databases, log on to HelpDesk Web Admin and click the Relocation tab.
- To check the location of the attachments, log on to HelpDesk Web Admin, click the Relocation tab, and click Relocate Attachments.
- You can use HelpDesk Admin to verify the location of the issue database. In the Project list, click the project to display the **Project Properties**. The **Project Location** specifies the location of the issue database.

Related Topics

[About Backing Up](#)

[Backing Up Projects](#)

[Backing Up the Users Database](#)

[Backing Up System Files](#)

[Backing Up Web Views](#)

[Automatic Backups](#)

[Performing Hot Backups](#)

[Restoring Backups](#)

Backing Up Projects

Projects include the definitions of fields, queries, sorts, layouts, reports, and notifications.

What to backup

Project definitions are stored in the definitions database.

Database engine	Database
Jet/MSAccess	<project>02.def file
SQL Server	<project>02_DEF database

In addition to the definitions database, there are several related files you should also back up.

Project File	Description
<project>.cen	Used for project initialization and versioning
<project>03.usr	Access database used by HelpDesk Admin

Note that Vector HelpDesk automatically backs up the **tbIDtsFields** table in the *definitions database*. This table contains the definitions of the fields in the project. The backup copies of the table are stored in the *definitions database*.

Related Topics

[About Backing Up](#)

[Backing Up Issues](#)

[Backing Up the Users Database](#)

[Backing Up System Files](#)

[Backing Up Web Views](#)

[Automatic Backups](#)

[Performing Hot Backups](#)

[Restoring Backups](#)

Backing Up the Users Database

The users database contains all user and contact information, and is shared by all projects.

What to backup

If at least one project uses SQL Server, the user data is stored in a SQL Server database. Otherwise, the user data is stored in a Microsoft Access .mdb file. The users database is located in the HelpDeskServer folder (for example, C:\Program Files\Vector\HelpDeskServer).

Database engine	Database
Jet/MSAccess	users.mdb
SQL Server	USERS_MDB

Related Topics

[About Backing Up](#)

[Backing Up Issues](#)

[Backing Up Projects](#)

[Backing Up System Files](#)

[Backing Up Web Views](#)

[Automatic Backups](#)

[Performing Hot Backups](#)

[Restoring Backups](#)

Backing Up System Files

We recommend you do a general backup of the files in the HelpDeskServer folder.

What files to backup

You should backup these files:

- Censys.mdw (security database that contains users, groups, and passwords).
- The license database.

Database engine	Database
Jet/MSAccess	Licenses.mdb
SQL Server	LICENSES_MDB

- CenSession.xml
- CenInfoSession.xml

Vector HelpDesk automatically creates backup copies of CenSys.mdw and CenSession.xml in the HelpDeskServer folder when the files change. A mirror of CenSys.mdw is also available (the mirror file is named CenSys_mir.mdw).

Related Topics

[About Backing Up](#)

[Backing Up Issues](#)

[Backing Up Projects](#)

[Backing Up the Users Database](#)

[Backing Up Web Views](#)

[Automatic Backups](#)

[Performing Hot Backups](#)

[Restoring Backups](#)

Backing Up Web Views

What to backup

You should backup these databases, files, and folders:

- The database of Web view definitions and settings.

Database engine	Database
Jet/MSAccess	censusweb.mdb
SQL Server	CENSUSWEB_MDB

- The CUSTOMIZEDFILES folder. This folder contains all the customized Web view files (for example, custom reports).

- The generated Web view files. Each Web view has its own folder. For example:

```
C:\Program Files\Vector\HelpDeskServer
\CensusWeb\Views\CensusWebVD\helpdesk_helpdesk C:\Program Files\Vector\HelpDeskServer
\CensusWeb\Views\CensusWebVD\HelpDesk_HelpDesk
```

- The project folders. Each project has its own folder. For example:

```
C:\Program Files\Vector\HelpDeskServer\helpdesk
```

The project folder stores attachments, the reports used to format notifications, the macro70.bas file, and the queue of notification messages.

Note that the attachments may be stored on a different computer. To check the location of the attachments, log on to HelpDesk Web Admin, click the **Relocation** tab, and click **Relocate Attachments**.

Related Topics

[About Backing Up](#)

[Backing Up Issues](#)

[Backing Up Projects](#)

[Backing Up the Users Database](#)

[Backing Up System Files](#)

[Automatic Backups](#)

[Performing Hot Backups](#)

[Restoring Backups](#)

Automatic Backups

Vector HelpDesk automatically backs up:

- The tblDtsFields table in the project definitions database. This table contains the definitions of the fields in the project.
- CenSession.xml
- CenSys.mdw

You can disable these automatic backups by setting the **Enable Backups** option to **No** (in the **Tools** menu, click **Options**).

Related Topics

[About Backing Up](#)

[Backing Up Issues](#)

[Backing Up Projects](#)

[Backing Up the Users Database](#)

[Backing Up System Files](#)

[Backing Up Web Views](#)

[Performing Hot Backups](#)

[Restoring Backups](#)

Performing Hot Backups

Hot backups are backups performed while the Vector HelpDesk system is in use. Hot backups are ideal for continuous operations.

To perform hot backups, the Vector HelpDesk administrator has to use database-specific tools:

- To back up data in a SQL Server database, use the built-in SQL Server backup utility.
- If SQL Client Tools are installed, you can use SQL Enterprise Manager to back up an MSDE database.
- To back up Jet/MSAccess databases, use a third-party tool like FMS Total Visual Agent.

Related Topics

[About Backing Up](#)

[Backing Up Issues](#)

[Backing Up Projects](#)

[Backing Up the Users Database](#)

[Backing Up System Files](#)

[Backing Up Web Views](#)

[Automatic Backups](#)

[Restoring Backups](#)

Restoring Backups

After restoring backups of the issue database and the project definitions database, use the Integrity editor to validate the integrity of fields, relationships, and the issue database.

Related Topics

[About Backing Up](#)

[Backing Up Issues](#)

[Backing Up Projects](#)

[Backing Up the Users Database](#)

[Backing Up System Files](#)

[Backing Up Web Views](#)

[Automatic Backups](#)

[Performing Hot Backups](#)

Uploading Large Attachments

On Windows Server 2003 systems, the default size limit for uploaded files is 4096 KB. If a user tries to upload an attachment that exceeds this limit, the user may get "The page cannot be displayed" or "Cannot find server or DNS Error" error messages.



To increase the upload limit for attachments:

- 1 Using a text editor, open:

```
\Program Files\Common Files\MetaQuest\Scripts\IIS\MqWVDConfig.vbs
```

- 2 Set the constant `UPLOAD_FILE_MAX_SIZE` to the maximum size (in bytes) for uploaded attachments. For example:

```
UPLOAD_FILE_MAX_SIZE = 1048576           ' 1 MB
UPLOAD_FILE_MAX_SIZE = 5242880          ' 5 MB
UPLOAD_FILE_MAX_SIZE = 10485760        '10 MB
```

- 3 Re-create the virtual directories where you want the new size limit to apply. Note that re-creating virtual directories logs off users.
 - a Start the Web View Editor.
 - b In the shortcut bar, click **URL** .
 - c Click  to open the Web View Wizard.
 - d In the Web View Wizard, click **Next** until you get to the last page of the wizard, then click **Finish**. This recreates the virtual directories associated with the existing URL.
 - e Click **Yes** each time the Wizard asks if you want to re-create a virtual directory and reset its properties.

A URL (such as `//Server/helpdesk`) has several associated virtual directories (for example, `helpdesk`, `helpdesk00`, `helpdesk01`, and `helpdesk02`).

Related Topics

[Fixing 404 Errors](#)

[Changing URLs and Directories](#)

Fixing 404 Errors

When Vector HelpDesk is installed on a Windows Server 2003 system, users may get 404 errors (File not found) when trying to open attachments. This is because IIS 6.0 on Windows Server 2003 only accepts requests for static files with extensions that it recognizes. You can prevent this problem by adding the extensions to MIME Types settings of the IIS server.

To define a MIME type for a specific extension:

- 1 Open **Internet Information Services**.
- 2 In the console tree, right-click the virtual directory used for attachments, then click **Properties**.
- 3 On the **HTTP Headers** tab, click **MIME Types**.
- 4 Click **New**.
- 5 In the **Extension** box, type a file name extension (for example, **.ini**).
- 6 In the **MIME Type** box, type the MIME type of the file (for example, **text/ini**).
- 7 Apply your changes.

Notes

- You may need to restart the World Wide Web Publishing Service before your changes take effect.
- For more information on MIME types, see MIME Types in the IIS 6.0 Manager Help.
- The URLScan tool can also be configured to block processing of certain file name extensions. Verify these settings.

Related Topics

[Uploading Large Attachments](#)

Chapter 14 - Importing Issues

About Importing Issues

Vector HelpDesk stores most of its issue data in the tblDts table of the issue database (<project>01.dat for Microsoft Access, <project>01_DAT for SQL Server). To import issue data into this table, use the **Import Issues** command in the **File** menu of HelpDesk Admin. Vector HelpDesk stores most of its issue data in the tblDts and tblFixInformation tables of the issue database. tblFixInformation stores the information entered in the Fix tab (note that not all projects use the Fix tab). The Import Issues dialog shows the following information:

Source table

You import issues from a source table, which could be in Microsoft Access, SQL Server, a delimited text file, or a number of other formats.

Source fields

Source fields are the fields imported from the source table

Destination fields

Destination fields are the fields in the Vector HelpDesk database table tblDts.

Mapped fields

You map source fields to destination fields. When you click Start, the mapping determines how the source fields are copied to the destination fields.

To import issues:

- 1 [Prepare your issue data and the Vector HelpDesk database.](#)
- 2 [Import issue data into a source table.](#)

A source table is an intermediate table that holds the issue data you want to import into tblDts and tblFixInformation.
- 3 [Map the fields in the source table](#) to the fields in tblDts and tblFixInformation.
- 4 Click **Start** to create new records in tblDts and tblFixInformation and to copy the imported issues from the source table into these new records.

Related Topics

[What Can You Import?](#)

[How New Records are Created](#)

[Before You Import](#)

[Importing Issues into a Source Table](#)

[Combining Multiple Source Tables](#)

[Importing Issues from Projects](#)

[Creating Queries to Merge Source Tables](#)

[Mapping Fields](#)

What Can You Import?

Vector HelpDesk uses Microsoft Access functionality to import data, so you can import from any of the formats and applications supported by Microsoft Access:

- Microsoft Access (databases other than the open database)
- Delimited text (values separated by commas, tabs, or other characters)
- Fixed-width text (values arranged so that each field has a defined width)
- Microsoft Excel (versions 2.x, 3.0, 4.0, and 5.0)
- Lotus 1-2-3 or 1-2-3/W (.WKS, .WK1, and .WK3 files)
- Paradox (version 3.x or 4.x .DB files)
- FoxPro (version 2.0 and 2.5 .DBF files)
- dBASE III and dBASE IV (.DBF files)
- Btrieve (with the data definition files FILE.DDF and FIELD.DDF)
- SQL databases, using ODBC drivers
- HTML

With Vector HelpDesk, you can import data into any of the fields in the tblIDs table. This table contains most of the issue data.

You cannot use Vector HelpDesk to import data into the following tables:

- tblUser, which contains user information such as the user's logon name, full name, e-mail address, and telephone number.
- tblAttachment, which contains the names of the files attached to different issues.
- Any of the tables that contain the possible values for choice lists.

Related Topics

[About Importing Issues](#)

[How New Records are Created](#)

[Before You Import](#)

[Importing Issues into a Source Table](#)

[Combining Multiple Source Tables](#)

[Importing Issues from Projects](#)

[Creating Queries to Merge Source Tables](#)

[Mapping Fields](#)

How Records are Created

When you click the Start button, Vector HelpDesk creates new records in tblIDs and tblFixInformation, and copies the data from the source table into the new records.

In general, if there is no mapping for a field or the imported data is invalid, Vector HelpDesk leaves the field blank. However, there are exceptions. The following summarizes how Vector HelpDesk handles fields when it creates new issues.

Issue Number

You cannot import issue numbers. Vector HelpDesk automatically assigns issue numbers to issues.

Owner (nUserID)

You can import the full name of a user or the ID of the user in tblUsr.

If there is no mapping or the user name is not found in tblUsr, the field is left blank.

Submitter (nSubmitterID)

You can import the full name of a user or the ID of the user in tblUsr.

If there is no mapping or the user name is not found in tblUsr, the name of the current user is stored in the field.

Contact (nOriginatorID)

You can import the full name of a user or the ID of the user in tblUsr.

If there is no mapping or the user name is not found in tblUsr, the name of the current user is stored in the field.

Progress

You can import the ID of a choice value or the choice text. If there is no mapping for a choice list field, Vector HelpDesk sets the **Progress** field to the choice with ID = 0 (by default, **New**).

State

You cannot import **State** values. sets the **State** field based on the **Progress** field.

Time and Date fields

You can import time and date values. If you do not map a date or time field, Vector HelpDesk sets the field to the current date or time. See the tblSubstate choice table for the mapping of Progress values to **State** values.

The **Closed Date** field value is imported only if the **State** is **Closed**.

Imported date values should use the format yyyy/mm/dd.

Imported time values should use the time format specified in the Regional Options of Windows Control Panel.

Choice lists

You can import either the choice ID (the nID of the choice in the Vector HelpDesk choice table) or the choice text.

Related Topics

[About Importing Issues](#)

[What Can You Import?](#)

[Before You Import](#)

[Importing Issues into a Source Table](#)

[Combining Multiple Source Tables](#)

[Importing Issues from Projects](#)

[Creating Queries to Merge Source Tables](#)

[Mapping Fields](#)

Before You Import

Add fields for imported data

Compare the issue data you want to import against the fields in tblIDs and tblFixInformation. If you want to import additional issue data for which there are no corresponding fields in these two tables, use the Field editor to add the required fields.

Create a Number field to hold imported IDs or record numbers

If you want to import the IDs or record numbers of your data records, create a numeric field in Vector HelpDesk. You can then map your record IDs to this field when you import your data.

Create users and contacts

Add users and contacts in Vector HelpDesk before importing data that contains user names.

When you import user names into the **Owner**, **Submitter**, and **Contact** fields, the names must match the full names assigned to the users in Vector HelpDesk. You must use the users' full names, not their logon names.

For example, if you import a set of issues owned by a user for whom no entry is defined, the **Owner** field is left blank.

Note that you can import the numeric ID for a user in the tblUser table (users database).

Customize Vector HelpDesk choice lists to match the imported data

In Vector HelpDesk, customize choice lists to match the values you want to import. You could also change the values in the imported data to match the Vector HelpDesk choice lists. You could do this in the original issue data, or you could use Microsoft Access to modify the source table created when you imported the original issue data.

If you are importing text files

If your issue data is in a text file, the first data record should contain the field names. Otherwise, Vector HelpDesk assigns the fields the names 1, 2, 3, and so on. This makes it harder to map the fields.

Also, the first data record should have no blank fields. Microsoft Access uses the first data record to determine the data types of the fields. For example, if a date field is blank, Microsoft Access imports it as a text value, and you will be unable to convert the field into date format.

Back Up Projects

Make a [backup](#) copy of the issue database before you import any data. If you make a mistake mapping the fields, having a backup copy allows you to change the mapping and try again.

Log off users

Make sure no one is using the project database while you import issues. Ask all users to exit Vector HelpDesk before you start to import issues.

Related Topics

[Backing Up Projects](#)

[Logging Off Users](#)

[About Importing Issues](#)

[What Can You Import?](#)

[How New Records are Created](#)

[Importing Issues into a Source Table](#)

[Combining Multiple Source Tables](#)

[Importing Issues from Projects](#)

[Creating Queries to Merge Source Tables](#)

[Mapping Fields](#)

Importing Issues into a Source Table

You don't import issues directly into the Vector HelpDesk tables. Instead, you import the issues into a source table. Vector HelpDesk copies the imported data into its tables after you define a mapping between the fields in the source table and the Vector HelpDesk fields.

To import issues from a file:

- 1 On the **File** menu, click **Import Issues**.
- 2 Click **New Source Table** to import data from a text file, spreadsheet, or database table into a Microsoft Access table (the source table).
- 3 In the **Files of Type** list, click the file format you want to import.
To import issues from another Vector HelpDesk database (or from any other Microsoft Access database), click **Microsoft Access**.
- 4 Click the file you want to import, and then click **Import**.
To import issues from a Vector HelpDesk Access database, select the **project01.dat** file.
- 5 In the Import Objects dialog, select the import options you want.
If you are importing from a text file or spreadsheet, select the **First Row Contains Field Names** check box.
If you are importing from a Microsoft Access database, select the tables you want to import.
- 6 Click **OK** to import the data.
Vector HelpDesk creates a source table named after the file you selected.
- 7 To import another file, repeat steps 4 and 5. When you've finished importing, click **Close**.

To import issues from a SQL database:

- 1 On the **File** menu, click **Import Issues**.
- 2 Click **New Source Table**.
- 3 In the **Files of type list**, click **ODBC**.
- 4 In the Select Data Source dialog, click the **Machine Data Source** tab.
- 5 Find the SQL Server data source and click **OK**.
- 6 In the SQL Server Login dialog, type your SQL Server login ID and password.
- 7 Click **Options**, and in the **Database** list, click a database.
To import issues from a SQL Server database, click the issue database.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 In the Import Objects dialog, select that tables you want to import.
For SQL Server databases, the table to import is dbo.tbIDts.
- 10 Click **OK**.

Related Topics

[About Importing Issues](#)

[What Can You Import?](#)

[How New Records are Created](#)

[Before You Import](#)

[Combining Multiple Source Tables](#)

[Importing Issues from Projects](#)

[Creating Queries to Merge Source Tables](#)

[Mapping Fields](#)

Combining Multiple Source Tables

When you import issues into Vector HelpDesk, you work with one source table at a time. If your issue data is stored in two or more tables, you'll need to combine those tables into a single source table before you can map the source fields to the destination fields.

First, use the Import Issues dialog to import each file into a separate source table, then use Microsoft Access to define a query that joins these source tables into a single table.

Related Topics

[About Importing Issues](#)

[What Can You Import?](#)

[How New Records are Created](#)

[Before You Import](#)

[Importing Issues into a Source Table](#)

[Importing Issues from Projects](#)

[Creating Queries to Merge Source Tables](#)

[Mapping Fields](#)

Importing Issues from Projects

In Vector HelpDesk projects, issue data may be split across two tables (tblIDs and tblFixInformation) in the issue database.

You need to merge the two tables before you can map the fields.

To import issues from Microsoft Access .dat files:

- 1 Click Add tblIDs and tblFixInformation to the list of source tables.
- 2 In the **Source Table** list, click **qryMergeCensusTables**.

This query adds the combined fields from tblIDs and tblFixInformation to the **Source Fields** list.

- 3 Click **Auto Map**, and then click **Start**.

To import issues from a SQL Server issue database:

- 1 Add dbo.tblIDs and dbo.tblFixInformation to the list of source tables.

The source tables are named dbo_tblIDs and dbo_tblFixInformation.

- 2 [Create a new query](#) to merge dbo_tblIDs and dbo_tblFixInformation.

- 3 In the **Source Table** list, click the new query.

This query adds the combined fields from dbo_tblIDs and dbo_tblFixInformation to the **Source Fields** list.

- 4 Click **Auto Map**, and then click **Start**.

Related Topics

[About Importing Issues](#)

[What Can You Import?](#)

[How New Records are Created](#)

[Before You Import](#)

[Importing Issues into a Source Table](#)

[Combining Multiple Source Tables](#)

[Creating Queries to Merge Source Tables](#)

[Mapping Fields](#)

Creating Queries to Merge Source Tables

The qryMergeCensusTables query merges two source tables named tblDts and tblFixInformation. If the source tables you want to merge have different names, you need to create a new query based on qryMergeCensusTables.

To create a new query for merging source tables:

- 1 Exit HelpDesk Admin and open Program Files\Vector\HelpDeskTools\Admin.mdb in Microsoft Access.
- 2 In the **Objects** list, click **Queries**. Click **qryMergeCensusTables** and click **Design**.
- 3 In the **View** menu, click **SQL View**.
- 4 In the SQL statements, replace all occurrences of tblDts and tblFixInformation with the names of the source tables you want to merge.
- 5 In the File menu, click **Save As** and type a name for the new query.
- 6 Close Admin.mdb.
- 7 Open Program Files\Vector\HelpDeskTools\Admin.mde.
- 8 Open the table tblImport and add a new record. In the tName column, type the name of the query. In the nID column, type a unique, numeric ID for the query (use the next available nID).
- 9 Close Admin.mde.
- 10 The new query is now available in the **Source Table** list of the Import Issues dialog.

Related Topics

[About Importing Issues](#)

[What Can You Import?](#)

[How New Records are Created](#)

[Before You Import](#)

[Importing Issues into a Source Table](#)

[Combining Multiple Source Tables](#)

[Importing Issues from Projects](#)

[Mapping Fields](#)

Mapping Import Fields

After you create a source table, you must define a mapping between the fields in the source table and the fields in tblDts and tblFixInformation. Vector HelpDesk uses this mapping to copy the imported data into the new records it creates in tblDts and tblFixInformation.

To map a source field to a destination field:

- 1 Click a field in the **Source Fields** list.
- 2 Click a field in the **Destination Fields** list. The data in the source field is copied to this field when you click the **Start** button.
- 3 Click the right arrow button to map the fields.

To remove a mapping:

- 1 In the **Mapped Fields** list, click a mapping.
- 2 Click the left arrow button.

Mapping Text Fields

Text fields, such as tBriefDescription, have a limit of 255 characters. Memo fields store large numbers of characters (in Access, up to 64000 characters; in SQL Server, up to maximum length of 231-1 (2,147,483,647) characters).

Mapping Memo Fields

Import data into the mDetailedDescription and Activity\$Log fields, not into the Description\$Input and Activity fields. Import data into the mDetailedDescription and Notes\$Log fields, not into the Description\$Input and Notes\$Input fields.

Importing Choice Lists

Import either the choice text or the numeric ID of the choice in the choice table.

Importing Users, Submitters, and Contacts

Import either the full name of a user, or the numeric ID for that user in the tblUser table (users database).

Related Topics

[About Importing Issues](#)

[What Can You Import?](#)

[How New Records are Created](#)

[Before You Import](#)

[Importing Issues into a Source Table](#)

[Combining Multiple Source Tables](#)

[Importing Issues from Projects](#)

[Creating Queries to Merge Source Tables](#)

Chapter 15 - Integrating Inventory

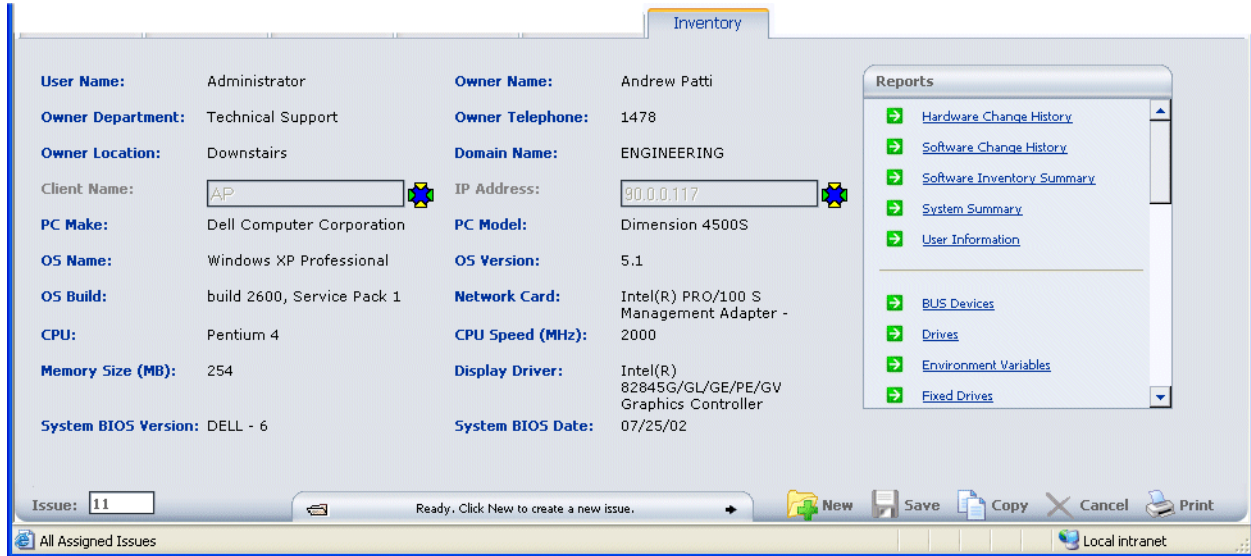
About Inventory

Integrating Vector HelpDesk with Vector Asset Management makes information about a user's PC immediately available to help desk staff. To display the software and hardware information for a computer, enter its name.

To ensure accurate, up-to-date information is available, run the hardware and software inventory operations regularly.

Software and Hardware Details

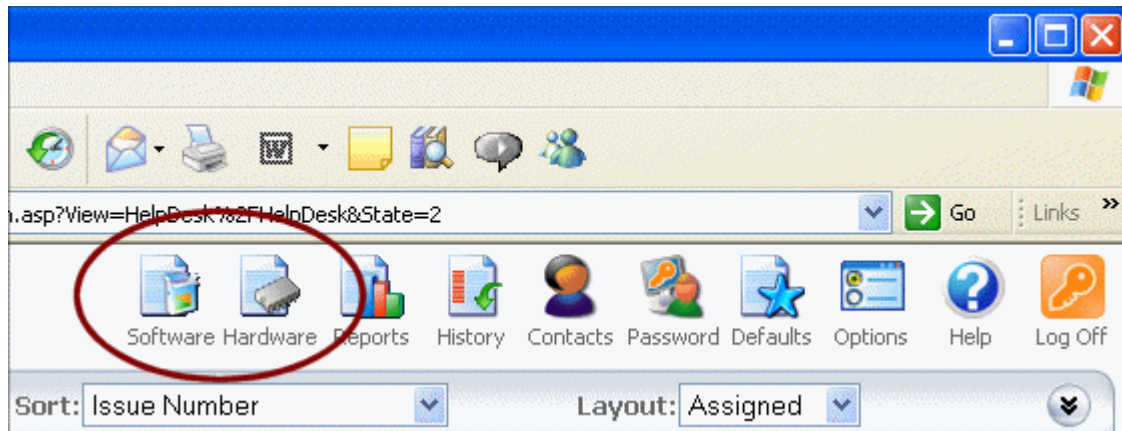
In a Web view, the Inventory tab displays a summary of the inventory information for the user's computer, and includes a set of detailed reports.



Only the computer name is stored in the Vector HelpDesk database. Web views use the computer name to dynamically get the inventory information from the Vector Asset Management site database.

Site-Wide Inventory Reports


In addition to the **Inventory** tab, which provides computer-specific information, Web views include software and inventory inventory reports. These site-wide reports provide information for all computers.



Remote Control

By default, Vector HelpDesk adds Remote Control buttons to the fields (such as Computer Name) used to query the Vector Asset Management site database for inventory information.

Computer Name: 

The Remote Control  button connects to the specified computer and starts a PC-Duo ActiveX Remote Control session. The remote control session runs in a browser window, and does not require the PC-Duo Control to be installed on the local computer.

Related Topics

[Removing Remote Control Buttons](#)

[How to Integrate Inventory](#)

How to Integrate Inventory

To integrate a Vector HelpDesk project with Vector Asset Management Inventory:

- 1 Link the project to a Vector Asset Management site database.
- 2 If necessary, modify the query that retrieves software and hardware inventory information from the site database. By default, Vector HelpDesk uses the **Computer Name** field to select inventory information from the site database.
- 3 Add the **Inventory** tab to Web views.

Related Topics

[Linking Projects and Site Databases](#)

[Defining the Query](#)

[Adding the Inventory Tab to Web Views](#)

Linking Projects and Site Databases

When you link a project to a site database, inventory information from that database is available in all Web views of the project that include the **Inventory** tab. You can link each Vector HelpDesk project to a different site database, or multiple projects to the same site database. You cannot link a project to more than one site database.

By default, a new project is linked to the same site database as its base project.

To link a project to a Vector Asset Management site database:

- 1 Log on to HelpDesk Web Admin.
- 2 Click the **Inventory** tab.
- 3 In the **Project** list, click the project in which you want to make inventory information available.
- 4 If the project is already linked to a site database, click **Remove**.
- 5 Click **Link** to open the Link Site Wizard.

- 6 Click **Next** to search the local computer for Vector Asset Managementsite databases.

Vector HelpDesk uses an ActiveX control to detect site databases on your computer. If a Security Warning dialog is displayed, allow Vector HelpDesk to download and install the control.

When the wizard finishes searching the computer, it displays a list of detected sites.

- 7 Under **Detected Sites**, click the site you want to link to the project.

If the site you want to link to is not listed under **Detected Sites**, click [Other Sites](#) to manually link to the site.

- 8 Click **Next**.

- 9 Click **Finish**.

Related Topics

[Editing Links](#)

[Removing Links](#)

[Defining the Query](#)

[Adding the Inventory Tab to Web Views](#)

[Hiding the Software and Hardware Report Buttons](#)

[Manually Linking to Other Sites](#)

[Gathering Information about the Site Database](#)

Editing Links

After a project is linked to a site database, you can edit the link.

- If the database location changes, you can update the location.
- If the database logon information changes, you can change the name and password Vector HelpDesk uses to connect to the database.
- You can change the name and description of the site. This information is displayed on the **Inventory** tab when you select a project.

Each project has a separate copy of the link information. For example, if the location of a site database changes, you need to edit the link for each project linked to that site database.

To edit the link between a project and a site database:

- 1** In the **Project** list, click a project.
- 2** Click **Edit**.
- 3** Edit the link information.
- 4** Click **Apply** to save your changes.

Related Topics

[Gathering Information about the Site Database](#)

[Linking Projects and Site Databases](#)

[Removing Links](#)

[Manually Linking to Other Sites](#)

Removing Links

Removing a link removes the information used by the project to connect to the site database. This does not remove data from the issue database because inventory information is not stored in the issue database.

If a project is no longer linked to a site database, remove the **Inventory** tab from the Web views of the project, otherwise an error is displayed if users attempt to view inventory reports.

To remove the link between a project and a site database:

- 1 In the **Project** list, click a project.
- 2 Click **Remove**.

Related Topics

[Linking Projects and Site Databases](#)

[Editing Links](#)

Defining the Query

By default, Vector HelpDesk uses the **Computer Name** field to select inventory information from the site database. The default query looks like this:

```
Client Name = Computer Name
```

Client Name is a field in the site database that stores the unique network name of a computer. **Computer Name** is a text field in the project.

To use a different site database field, such as **User Name** (the user name for a Windows user account), you must:

- 1 Add a new text field to the project (such as Windows User Name) so help desk staff can enter the value to be used in the query.
- 2 Change the query. For example:

```
User Name = Windows User Name
```

Inventory Fields

The list of Inventory fields that you can use in a query come from the NODES table in the site database.

The **Inventory** field must have unique values, otherwise, Vector HelpDesk can retrieve inventory data for more than one computer. In this case, Vector HelpDesk only displays the inventory data for the first computer found.

HelpDesk Fields

The list of HelpDesk fields includes all text and number fields that are not on the **Contact** tab.


Related Topics

[Linking Projects and Site Databases](#)

[Adding the Inventory Tab to Web Views](#)

Adding the Inventory Tab to Web Views

To add the Inventory tab:

- 1 Log on to the Web View Editor, and in the shortcut bar, click **Fields** .
- 2 In the **Tab** list, click **Overview**. Add the **Computer Name** field to the **Export To View** list.
- 3 In the **Tab** list, click **Inventory**. Add all the Inventory fields to the **Export To View** list.

You must export at least the **Client Name** field. To make sure all the Inventory reports work, export all the Inventory fields.

Notes

- If you do not export all the fields, the System Summary report will be incomplete or display the error message "The field name is not known".

Hiding the Software and Hardware Report Buttons

Adding the **Inventory** tab also adds the Software and Hardware report buttons to the Web view. You can use [group permissions](#) to control access to these reports.

To hide the buttons, disable:

- Report Viewer - Hardware Inventory
- Report Viewer - Software Inventory

Related Topics

[Linking Projects and Site Databases](#)

[Defining the Query](#)

Manually Linking to Sites

If Vector HelpDesk does not automatically detect the site you want to link to, you can manually create the link. You need to know the name, location, and type of database, and the details of a user account that can be used to log on to the site database.

To manually link a project to a site database:

- 1 Log on to HelpDesk Web Admin.
- 2 Click the **Inventory** tab and click a project in the **Project** list, .
- 3 Click **Link** to open the Link Site Wizard, then click **Next**.
- 4 Click **Other Sites** then click **Next**.
- 5 In the **Site Name** box, type a name for the site. This name is used only by Vector HelpDesk, and does not change the name of the site in Vector Asset Management.
- 6 Type a **Description** of the site.
- 7 In the **Type** list, click the type of database you want to link to.
- 8 Specify the database location and name:
 - To connect to a Microsoft Access database, click **Browse** and locate the database file (an .mdb file).
Look in the network, not the local computer, to locate the database. By default, site databases are located in the Vector Data\Databases folder.
 - To connect to a SQL Server database, enter the **Name** of the SQL Server database, and the name of the **SQL Server**. The name of the SQL Server is typically the computer name of the server.
- 9 If you need to log on to the site database, type the account details in the **User Name**, **Password** and **Confirm Password** boxes.
When you have finished, click **Test** to verify the database connection.

Related Topics

[Gathering Information about the Site Database](#)

[Linking Projects and Site Databases](#)

[Editing Links](#)

[Defining the Query](#)

[Adding the Inventory Tab to Web Views](#)

[Hiding the Software and Hardware Report Buttons](#)

Gathering Information about the Site Database

To integrate Vector Inventory with Vector HelpDesk, you need the following information:

- The details of the database used by the Vector Site:
 - For a Microsoft Access database, you need the name and location of the Microsoft Access .mdb file
 - For a SQL Server or MSDE database, you need the names of the server and the database (the name of server is usually the name of the computer on which SQL Server/MSDE is installed).
- The details of a user account that can be used to log on to the Site database?

To use the Vector Asset Management Console to check the database type, name, and location:

- 1** In the Console tree, expand the site, and then click **Site Management**.
- 2** In the **Details** area, click **Database and Licensing**.

The **Database Location** box specifies the type, name, and location of the database. For example:

ACCESS MySiteDB \\server\share\MySiteDB.mdb

-or-

SQL SERVER MySite MySQLServer MySiteDB

To use the Vector Asset Management Console to check the logon information:

- 1** In the Console tree, click **Enterprise Management**.
- 2** In the right pane, click **Logon Information**.

Related Topics

[Manually Linking to Other Sites](#)

[Editing Links](#)

Chapter 16 - Integrating Remote Control

About Remote Control

Remote Control enables a help desk analyst to take control of a user's computer to investigate problems and provide support from inside a Web view. To start a remote control session, the help desk analyst enters a computer name in a field and clicks the **Remote Control** button adjacent to the field.

Computer Name: 

The button connects to the specified computer and starts a PC-Duo ActiveX Remote Control session. The remote control session runs in a browser window, and does not require the PC-Duo Control to be installed on the local computer.

The requirements for remote control are:

- The Web view must be running in Internet Explorer.
The Remote Control button loads a page that contains an ActiveX control. This ActiveX control allows the help desk analyst to watch, share, or control the remote computer.
- The PC-Duo Remote Control Client must be installed on the remote computer, and the Client cannot use its license key serial number as a security key.

Related Topics

[Setting Up Remote Control](#)

[Adding Remote Control Buttons](#)

[Configuring ActiveX for Remote Control](#)

[Checking Client Security Key Settings](#)

[Removing Remote Control Buttons](#)

Setting Up Remote Control

To add remote control to a Web view:

- 1 Add a text field where users can enter the computer name or IP address.

This field is used to identify the PC-Duo Client on the user's computer. The HelpDesk project includes a Computer Name field for this purpose.

- 2 Add the Remote Control button to the field.
- 3 Generate the Web view.

Related Topics

[About Remote Control](#)

[Adding Remote Control Buttons](#)


[Configuring ActiveX for Remote Control](#)

[Checking Client Security Key Settings](#)

[Removing Remote Control Buttons](#)

Adding Remote Control Buttons

To add the Remote Control button to a field:

- 1 Log on to the Web View Editor.
- 2 In the shortcut bar, click **Remote Control** .
- 3 In the **Available Fields** list, expand the tab that contains the field.
If you do not see the field, select the **Show All** check box to show all available fields.
- 4 Select the **Can Connect** check box for the field.
- 5 Generate the Web view.

When you select the **Can Connect** check box for a field, the Web View Editor sets the **URL** and **URL Button CSS** attributes of the field.

The **URL** field attribute is set to:

```
../../RC/rcviewer.asp?Client=%fieldvalue%
```

The first part of the URL (`../../RC/rcviewer.asp`) is the Remote Control URL, which points to this file:

```
HelpDeskServer\CensusWeb\Views  
    \CensusWebVD\RC\rcviewer.asp
```

The RCviewer.asp file is installed with Vector HelpDesk. You can customize this file to change the default remote control settings. For example, you can specify the security key used to access clients, and enable encryption or compression.

The second part of the URL is a query string that identifies the computer to control. When a user clicks the Remote Control button, **%fieldvalue%** is replaced with the current contents of the field.

The **URL Button CSS** field attribute specifies the CSS class used for the button.

Related Topics

[About Remote Control](#)

[Setting Up Remote Control](#)

[Configuring ActiveX for Remote Control](#)

[Checking Client Security Key Settings](#)

[Removing Remote Control Buttons](#)

Configuring ActiveX for Remote Control

To configure PC-Duo ActiveX Remote Control, you edit the file RCviewer.asp, which is located in the folder

```
HelpDeskServer\CensusWeb\Views  
  \CensusWebVD\RC\RCViewer.asp
```

RCViewer.asp contains a number of variables that allow you set options and defaults.

After you customize RCViewer.asp, copy the file to

```
HelpDeskServer\CensusWeb\CUSTOMIZEDFILES  
  \#Project#helpdesk\RC
```

This ensures that the next time you generate a Web view, the customized copy of RCViewer.asp is copied to the output folder.

DEFAULT_SECURITY_KEY

Specifies the security key used by PC-Duo ActiveX Remote Control when it connects to clients.

The ActiveX control does not support licensing, so you cannot type an asterisk to use the license key serial number as the security key.

DEFAULT_COMPRESS

Enables (1) and disables (0) compression. By default, compression is disabled.

DEFAULT_ENCRYPT

Enables (1) and disables (0) encryption. The encryption type is 56-bit DES encryption. By default, encryption is disabled.

DEFAULT_SCALE_TO_FIT

Specifies whether the remote screen is scaled to fit in the browse window when the remote control session starts. Set to 0 to turn off scaling.

Users can turn on scaling after the remote control session starts by selecting the **Scale to Fit** check box.

DEFAULT_SCROLL_BARS

Specifies whether the view window has scroll bars when the remote control session starts. Set to 0 to turn off scroll bars.

Users can turn on scroll bars after the remote control session starts (by selecting the Scroll Bars check box).

DEFAULT_VIEW_TYPE

Specifies the default viewing mode (Watch, Share, or Control). Users can change the viewing mode after the remote control session starts.

DEFAULT_INIT

Specifies the name displayed by the PC-Duo Client during a remote control session. Allows the remote users to identify who is controlling their computer. "*" means use the computer name.

Related Topics

[Setting Up Remote Control](#)

[Checking Client Security Key Settings](#)

Checking Client Security Key Settings

PC-Duo ActiveX Remote Control cannot connect to clients that use the license key serial number as a security key.

To check if a client is using the serial number as a security key:

- 1** In the **Client Configurator**, edit the **Master Profile**.
- 2** On the **Users** tab, the **Security Key** box contains the security key.

If the Security Key box contains an asterisk (*), the PC-Duo ActiveX Remote Control will be unable to connect to the client because the client is using the serial number.

Related Topics

[About Remote Control](#)

[Setting Up Remote Control](#)


[Adding Remote Control Buttons](#)

[Configuring ActiveX for Remote Control](#)

[Removing Remote Control Buttons](#)

Removing Remote Control Buttons

To remove the Remote Control button from a field:

- 1 Log on to the Web View Editor.
- 2 In the shortcut bar, click **Remote Control** .
- 3 In the **Available Fields** list, expand the tab that contains the field.
- 4 Clear the **Can Connect** check box for the field.
- 5 Generate the Web view.

Related Topics

[About Remote Control](#)

[Setting Up Remote Control](#)

[Adding Remote Control Buttons](#)

[Configuring ActiveX for Remote Control](#)

[Checking Client Security Key Settings](#)

Chapter 17 - Customizing HelpDesk

Power Customizations

This section covers a variety of ways to customize Vector HelpDesk, all of which are considered power customizations.

Power customizations involve using the Microsoft Access development environment (or the SQL Server Query Analyzer), Visual Basic, Javascript, and other advanced techniques to customize Vector HelpDesk.

About the Databases

Issue database

Stores the issues and their revision histories.

Project definitions database

Stores all project-related definitions, including fields, queries, sorts, layouts, reports, and notifications.

Users database

Stores user accounts, contacts, and the information entered on the **Contact** tab.

Database	Jet/Access	SQL Server
Issue	<project>01.dat	<project>01_DAT
Project definitions	<project>02.def	<project>02_DEF
Users	users.mdb	USERS_MDB

Related Topics

[Editing Databases](#)

Editing Databases

Some customizations require that you edit tables in the project databases.

To edit a table in an Access database:

- 1 Start Microsoft Access and open the database.
- 2 Under **Objects**, click **Tables**.
- 3 Locate the table you want to edit, and double-click it.
- 4 Locate the row you want to modify and make your changes.
- 5 Click in another row, or close the table, to save your changes.

To edit a table in a SQL Server database:

- 1 Start the SQL Query Analyzer.
- 2 In the Object Browser, locate the database and table you want to edit.
- 3 Right-click the table and click **Open**.
- 4 Locate the row you want to modify and make your changes.
- 5 Click in another row, or close the table, to save your changes.

Related Topics

[About the Databases](#)

Creating an Attachments Field

To create an attachments field:

- 1 Open the project definitions database.
- 2 Open the tblDtsFields table.
- 3 Copy the record for the **Attachments** field and paste it into a new record.
- 4 Change the nID, tTableName, tName, tCaption, tLabelCaption, and tBoundControlName fields.
- 5 If you want to put the new attachments field on a different tab, change the **nDestinationTabID** field.

tblDtsFields field	Description
nID	Unique ID for the field.
tTableName	Name of the attachments table in the issue database. The attachments table stores information about attached files. Also, the name of a table in the users database (the table is named <tTableName>Temporary).
tName	Name of the field in the attachments table of the issue database. Stores the name of an attached file.
tCaption	Label used in choice lists.
tLabelCaption	Default label for the field in a Web view.
tBound ControlName	Internal name for the field.

To create an attachments table:

- 1 In the issue database, copy tblAttachments. Use the tTableName of the new attachments field as the name.
- 2 Change the name of the tAttachments field in the new table. Use the tName of the new attachments field as the new name.

To create a temporary attachments table:

In the users database, copy the tblAttachmentsTemporary table. Name the new table **<tTableName>Temporary**.

To add a record to tblDtsTables:

In tblDtsTables (project definitions database) copy the record for the attachments table. Change **tTableName** and **tTableNameTemp** to the names of the new attachments tables in the issue and users databases.

Related Topics

[About the Databases](#)

[Editing Databases](#)

Customizing URL Buttons

URL buttons are implemented as A elements with background images.

Each of the default URL buttons (URLButton , MailToButton , RemoteControl ) has four CSS classes, along with four associated :hover classes. The Web View Editor automatically determines which CSS class to use based on the field type and the field attribute settings. For example, the CSS classes used for URLButton are determined as follows:

When	These CSS classes are used
Column Span=1	URLButtonState1 URLButtonState1:hover
Column Span=2 CSS Class = MemoFieldWidth	URLButtonSpanTwoState1 URLButtonSpanTwoState1:hover
Column Span=2 CSS Class = SpanTwoWidthOne	URLButtonTwoWidthOneState1 URLButtonSpanTwoWidthOneState1:hover
Field already has a button (for example, a date field).	URLButtonSecondButtonState1 URLButtonSecondButtonState1: hover

These CSS classes are defined in the CensusMain.css style sheet in CensusWeb\Views\CensusWebVD\Theme\css.

Each different pair of CSS classes positions the button differently, by changing the value of the CSS **left** property.

The :hover pseudo classes change the background image to give a rollover effect.

To define your own buttons, copy the URLButton classes, change the class names, and point the background-image property to your button images. For example:

```
.MyButtonState1
{
    background-image:
        url(../images/buttons/mybutton_off.gif);
    background-repeat:no-repeat;
    display:block;
    position:absolute;
    left:80%;
    width:24px;
    height:24px;
    top:0px;
}
```

For button rollovers, you'll need two versions of your button image. Your button images should have a one or two pixel margin (so there's some space between the field and the button). Alternatively, you could adjust the **left** property.

To use these new classes, use MyButton as the value of the **URL Button CSS** attribute.

Customizing the Inventory Tab

The list of reports that appears on the **Inventory** tab is customizable. You can:

- Remove reports.
- Reorder the list.
- Change report names (captions).
- Add separators between reports.
- Change the title of the reports list (by default, the title is "Reports").

To customize the list of reports on the Inventory tab, edit the file `tmplInventoryTab.rec`, which is located in the folder

```
HelpDeskServer\CensusWeb\CUSTOMIZEDFILES
  \#Project#helpdesk\#AllWebViews#\Misc
```

In `tmplInventoryTab.rec`, the reports list is stored in an array named `arrReports`. `arrReports` is an array of arrays, that is, each element in `arrReports` is itself an array. Each of these arrays contains information about a different report.

The following code fragment shows how a report is added to the list:

```
// start Reports list
arrReports = [
    // array of report information
    [ GetOpenReportOnClickFunction(...),
      "<caption>", "<tooltip>", "<html-markup>" ]
    ] // end of Reports list
```

where:

GetOpenReportOnClickFunction(...) returns the `onClick` event handler, which opens the report when a user clicks it. Do not edit this function call.

<caption> is the report name displayed in the list.

<tooltip> is the text displayed when a user points to the button beside a report. In `tmplInventoryTab.rec`, the caption and tooltip are specified by text that looks like this:

```
<Mq:ReportCaption>155.10</Mq:ReportCaption>
```

When you generate a Web view, this text is replaced with the name of the report.

<html-markup> is HTML markup that is inserted into the list after the report. For example, you can add separators by adding "`<hr />`".

To reorder the list of reports:

- 1 In `tmplInventoryTab.rec`, change the order in which the reports are added into the `arrReports` array.
- 2 Some reports add a separator ("`<hr />`"), so you may have to edit the report arrays to put the separators in the right places.
- 3 Generate the Web views that include the Inventory tab.

To remove reports:

- 1 In `tmplInventoryTab.rec`, comment out (or delete) the reports that you want to remove.
- 2 Generate the Web views that include the Inventory tab.

To change a report name:

- 1 In `tmplInventoryTab.rec`, replace the text that looks like this:

```
"<Mq:ReportCaption>155.10</Mq:ReportCaption>"
```

with the report name you want to see.

Remember, the tooltip is the second element in the array, and the caption is the third.

- 2 Generate the Web view.

To add a separator between two reports:

- 1 In `tmplInventoryTab.rec`, find the array for the first of the two reports.
- 2 Change the fourth element of the report array from "" to "<hr/>" (or to whatever HTML you want to use as a separator).
- 3 Generate the Web views that include the Inventory tab.

To change the title of the reports list:

- 1 In `tmplInventoryTab.rec`, find this `document.write` statement (near the end of the file):

```
document.write(m_objWebPart.GetHTML_ListContainer("Reports", "../../theme/images/images/ListImage.gif", arrReports));
```

- 2 Change the first argument to **GetHTML_ListContainer()** from "Reports" to the title you want to see.
- 3 Generate the Web views that include the Inventory tab.

Building Custom Reports

Using Crystal Reports, you can add features such as charts, formulas, field highlighting, and running totals to a listing report. You can also import graphics (such as company logos) and completely reformat a listing report. To build custom reports, you need a version of Crystal Reports that is version 8.5 or beyond.

Customized listing reports appear on the **Custom** tab of the HelpDesk Web Report Viewer. After you customize a listing report, you cannot edit it in the Report Editor. You must use Crystal Reports.

While HelpDesk comes with numerous custom reports out of the box, it may be desirable to create additional custom reports. The process of creating such a report is as follows:

- 1 Open the **Report Editor** for the desired project.
- 2 Select the **Listing** tab.
- 3 Locate a report that has the **Custom Report** checkbox checked. If checked, this indicates that the report will appear in the **Custom** tab of **Reports** section of the Web views.
- 4 Click the **Copy Report** button. Choose a name for the new report, type it in, and press **OK**.
- 5 Press **Apply** to save your changes.

Note: After doing this, HelpDesk will have already saved two .rpt files in the **CustomizedFiles** folder allocated to this project. In order to view the reports in the Web views, they must be moved to the Web view folder. This can be achieved by regenerating the Web views that are related to the project.

Example:

```
CUSTOMIZEDFILES\#Project#HelpDesk\#AllWebViews#\
```

- 6 Regenerate the Web views that are related to the project.
- 7 Navigate to the Web view's **Reports** folder, and locate the two .rpt files. From here you can use Crystal Reports to edit the .rpt files. If you wish to add, change, or remove fields, create cross tabs, or add new charts, you will need advanced knowledge of Crystal Reports. Please contact support for more information.

If the report name is "Open Issues - Age by Priority" then the filenames will be:

```
rptListingGOpen$Issue$-$Age$by$Prioritylandscape.rpt
```

```
rptListingGOpen$Issue$-$Age$by$Priorityportrait.rpt
```

Once the modifications have been made to both files, they must now be copied to the **CustomizedFiles** folder to ensure they will be included the next time the Web views are generated.

See [Customizing Web View Files](#) for more information on the CustomizedFiles folder.

Using Crystal Reports for all Listing Reports

It is also possible to use the Crystal Reports engine for all the Listing reports, rather than the HTML report engine. In this case, a Creation API for Crystal Reports 9.0 would need to be purchased from a third party. Once purchased, this Creation API, after having been installed on the web server, will enable HelpDesk to display all existing and future Listing reports using the Crystal Reports Engine. This is done automatically without the need to use the Crystal Reports Editor. Since this involves the automatic generation of .rpt files, Crystal Reports requires that the Creation API be present.

Related Topics

[Defining Listing Reports](#)

[Customizing Shared Web View Files](#)

[Changing Report Viewers](#)

About HTML Reports

Web views use HTML to display Listing reports. You can customize this HTML by editing the XML files that define the HTML page template.

- **TmplRpt_listing_<type>.xml**
HTML template for an HTML report page, including the table that contains the report data.
- **ValueCell_listing_<type>.xml**
HTML template for a table cell that displays a field value.
- **CaptionCell_listing_<type>.xml**
HTML template for a table cell that displays a field caption.

where **<type>** is either tabular or multi-column (the two types of listing reports).

You can find these files in the **Reports** folder of a Web view, for example:

```
C:\Program Files\Vector
  \HelpDeskServer\CensusWeb
    \Views\CensusWebVD\helpdesk_helpdesk\Reports
```

These XML files are dynamically created the first time you view a report.

Vector HelpDesk generates the HTML reports by transforming raw XML data into HTML using an XSL style sheet. The three .xml files are templates for the XSL style sheet.

Related Topics

[Changing the CSS Styles](#)

[PlaceHolders](#)

Changing the CSS Styles

The CSS styles used by the HTML reports are defined in the TmplRpt_listing_<type>.xml file.

Notes

Reports are used to format attachments to e-mail notifications. Using an embedded style sheet ensures that notification attachments are formatted. If you want to use an external style sheet, you must use an absolute URL to locate the style sheet.

Related Topics

[About HTML Reports](#)

[PlaceHolders](#)

PlaceHolders

The empty elements, such as `<ReportHeader/>` and `<TableCells/>`, in `TmpRpt_listing_<type>.xml` are placeholders. When Vector HelpDesk generates a report, it replaces these placeholders with report-specific data.

- `<ColumnHeaders/>` is a placeholder for the field titles.

The file `CaptionCell_listing_<type>.xml` contains the HTML template for a field title, where `<CellWidth />` and `<CaptionCell />` are the width and title from the Report Editor.

- `<TableCells/>` is a placeholder for the field values.

The file `ValueCell_listing_<type>.xml` contains the HTML template for a field value.

- `<ReportCaption />` is the name given to the report in the Report Editor.
- `<ReportHeader />` is the title text from the Page Editor. `<ReportHeaderCSS />` is the formatting applied to the title text.
- `<PageHeader />` is the header text from the Page Editor. `<PageHeaderCSS />` is the formatting applied to the header text.
- `<PageFooter />` is the footer text from the Page Editor. `<PageFooterCSS />` is the formatting applied to title text.

Notes

To see the generated HTML, open a report in a Web view and then view the page source.

Related Topics

[About HTML Reports](#)

[Changing the CSS Styles](#)

Customizing the Report Used to Print Issues

The report used to print issues is named Current Issue - Detailed. If you edit this report in the Report Editor (of HelpDesk Admin), the changes apply to all Web views of the project.

Each view has two versions this report:

```
rptListingGCurrent$Record$-$DetailedPortrait.rpt  
rptListingGCurrent$Record$-$DetailedLandscape.rpt
```

You can find these files in the

```
CensusWebVD\<<project>_<view>\Reports
```

folder, where <project> is the name of the project and <view> is the name of the Web view. The portrait version of the report is used to print issues.

To customize the report:

- 1 View the portrait version of the report in a Web view. You can either print an issue or view the report with the Report Viewer.

Viewing the report creates the .rpt file.

- 2 In the Report Editor (HelpDesk Admin), mark the report as a custom report (select the **Custom** check box).

This prevents Vector HelpDesk from overwriting the customized report if the report definition changes.

- 3 Using Crystal Reports, customize the report (add graphics, change fonts, rearrange and align fields).

- 4 Put a copy of the customized report in:

```
CUSTOMIZEDFILES  
  \#Project#\<project>  
    \#WebView#\<view>  
      \Reports
```

When you regenerate the Web view, the customized version of the report is copied to the Web view folder.

Notes

The information in this section applies only if you use Crystal Reports for listing reports. See [Viewing Reports](#) for more information on using Crystal Reports for listing reports.

Deleting Users

Disabled users are not deleted from the database because existing issues may refer to those users. If you don't want to see disabled users in the **Contact**, **Owner**, and **Submitter** fields:

- Delete the user from the users database.
- Remove disabled users from the **Contact**, **Owner**, and **Submitter** choice lists.

However, if an existing issue references the user in its **Owner**, **Submitter**, or **Contact** field, the field will be empty. In some cases, this may cause an *invalid use of null* error.

If existing issues reference disabled users, it may be impractical to delete the user accounts for ex-employees or contractors, because you want to keep a historical record of who reported, submitted, and resolved issues. In that case, you can add a prefix to the names of disabled accounts.

Before you delete users or remove them from the choice lists, check if they are referenced by existing issues.

To check if a user is referenced by existing issues:

- 1 Open the users database, and open the **tblUser** table.
- 2 Find the record for the user you want to delete, and get the value in the **User ID** field.
For example, if you want to delete the demo user, the **User ID** is 2.
- 3 Open the issue database for the project.
- 4 Open **tblDts** and look for the user ID in the columns of choice list fields that use **tblUser**. For example, **nUserID** (Owner), **nOriginatorID** (Contact), and **nSubmitterID** (Submitter)

To sort the table by user ID:

- a Click in the **nUserID**, **nOriginatorID**, or **nSubmitterID** column.
- b In the **Record** menu, click **Sort** then click **Sort Ascending** or **Sort Descending**.
- c Scroll through the records to see if the user owns any records.

Note that the revision history (the **tblDts_History** table in the issue database) also references users. And while unlikely, queries, summary reports, time reports, and notifications may also reference specific users. The definitions of queries, reports, and notifications are in the project definitions database.

If existing issues do reference the user, you can always reassign open issues, but closed issues can be a problem. You may want to keep a historical record of who reported, submitted, and resolved an issue. If so, you have to keep the disabled users.

Related Topics

[About the Databases](#)

[Editing Databases](#)

[Removing Disabled Users from Choice Lists](#)

[Adding a Choice List of Users or Contacts](#)

Removing Disabled Users from Choice Lists

Instead of deleting users from the users database, you can prevent the **Owner** and **Contact** lists from showing disabled users. However, if an existing issue references the user in its **Owner** or **Contact** field, the field will be empty.

To remove disabled users from choice lists:

- 1 Open the project definitions database.
- 2 Open **tblDtsFields** and find the owner (nID = 11) and contact (nID = 13) records.
- 3 In the **tWhere** field, add **And fDeleted = 0** to the **Where** clause. For example:

```
Where (([nID] >= 0 And [tName] <> '') Or [tName] = '<User>') And fOriginator = 0 And  
fDeleted = 0
```

Adding a Choice List of Users or Contacts

To add a choice list of users:

- 1 In the Field Editor, create a new field.
- 2 In the **Type** list, click **Multi-Choice List** or **Single Choice List**.
- 3 In the **Table Containing Choices** list, click **tblUser**.
 - tblUser** cannot be viewed or edited in the **Choice Editor**.
- 4 Click **Close** to apply the changes.
- 5 Open the project definitions database.
- 6 Open **tblDtsFields** and find the record for the new field. In the **tWhere** field, type:

```
Where (([nID] >= 0 And [tName] <> '') Or
      [tName] = '<User>') And fOriginator = 0
```

The [nID] >= 0 condition removes the macros defined in **tblUser** (the users database):

User ID	User Name
-4	<Contact>
-3	<User>
-2	<Previous Owner>
-1	<Owner>

The user with nID = 0 is the **<None>** macro.

The fOriginator = 0 condition removes contacts, so that the list contains users only.

To add a choice list of users and contacts:

Use this **tWhere** clause:

```
Where (([nID] >= 0 And [tName] <> '') Or
      [tName] = '<User>')
```

Related Topics

[About the Databases](#)


[Editing Databases](#)

[Deleting Users](#)

[Removing Disabled Users from Choice Lists](#)

Enabling Timestamping in New Projects

When you create a new project based on the HelpDesk project, the new project inherits the original timestamping fields and new Web views are created based on the Web views of the original project.

When a new Web view is copied from an existing one, timestamping fields retain their behaviour. However, if a new, blank Web view is created by clicking **New View** , then additional steps need to be taken to enable timestamping.

To make timestamping work in Web views of the new project, you must update the **Html code after control** attribute of the **Description**, **Description Log**, **Activity**, and **Activity Log** fields.

You need to set the **Html code after control** attribute of the timestamping fields. The required HTML is included below. Note that it is formatted for readability—the attribute itself takes a single line of text.

Description

```
<script type='text/javascript'>
    document.write(
        parent.objCustomCode.getCodeAfterField(
            '%fieldname%',
            'mem_29_txtDetailedDescription' )
    )
</script>
```

Description Log

```
<script type='text/javascript'>
document.write(
    parent.objCustomCode.getCodeAfterField(
        '%fieldname%',
        '' )
)
</script>
```

Activity

```
<script type='text/javascript'>
document.write(
    parent.objCustomCode.getCodeAfterField(
        '%fieldname%',
        'mem_56_mem_56_ActivityLog' )
)
</script>
```

Activity Log

```
<script type='text/javascript'>
document.write(
    parent.objCustomCode.getCodeAfterField(
        '%fieldname%',
        '' )
)
</script>
```

Adding Timestamping

Changes to a memo field can be time-stamped. For example, you can time-stamp the changes, comments, notes, and follow-ups that are added to an issue description over time.

Timestamping requires two memo fields, one for input and one for storing the timestamped log. When an issue is saved, the Web view automatically copies the contents of the input field to the log field.

- 1 Use the Field Editor to create a memo field for input of new data, and a field for displaying the timestamped log. For the input field, clear the **Show in Choice Lists** and **Maintain Revision History** check boxes.
- 2 Find the internal name of the timestamp log field. The internal name looks like *mem_58_mem_58_FieldName*.

If you have Microsoft Access, you can find the internal name by opening the project definitions database and looking in the `tblIDtsFields` table. The field name is composed from the values in the **nID** and **tBoundControlName** fields:

```
mem_<nID>_<tBoundControlName>
```

The **tBoundControlName** field includes a repeat of the *mem_<nID>* string. That is why the string appears twice in the name.

If you don't have a copy of Microsoft Access, generate a Web view for the project, then get the value of the **name** attribute of the text area control associated with the timestamp log field. You can find this in the **tmplRecord.html** file located in the HTML folder of the view:

```
CensusWebVD\<project>_<view>\HTML
```

- 3 Set the HTML code after control attributes:

Before you generate a Web view, you must export the two fields and set their HTML code after control attributes.

- a For the input field, enter this HTML code (as a single line of text):

```
<script type='text/javascript'>document.write
( parent.objCustomCode.getCodeAfterField( '%fieldname%', '<timestamp-log-field-name>' )
) </script>
```

`<timestamp-log-field-name>` is the field name you found in the previous step. Note that the javascript is case sensitive.

- b For the timestamp log field, enter this HTML code (as a single line of text):

```
<script type='text/javascript'>document.write
( parent.objCustomCode.getCodeAfterField('%fieldname%', '' ) )</script>
```

Related Topics

[Customizing Timestamping](#)

[Timestamping with One Memo Field](#)

[Inserting Custom HTML Code](#)

Customizing Timestamping

By default, each time a new entry is added to the timestamp log, a line that looks like this is added:

```
December 11, 2001 4:38 PM analyst (New)
```

You can customize the way the timestamp log is formatted by editing **MoveControlData()** in **Js\CustomCode.js**. For example, you can insert a line of dashes to separate entries, add tabs (\t), or add more line breaks (\r):

```
objTargetControl.value="-----\r" +
                                getDate() + "\r" +
                                objSourceControl.value +
\r\r
                                objTargetControl.value +
\r";
```

where:

getDate() returns a string that includes the date, time, name of the current user, and current value of the Progress field.

objSourceControl.value is the new input to add to the timestamp log

objTargetControl.value is the content of the timestamp log.

Related Topics

[Adding Timestamping](#)

[Timestamping with One Memo Field](#)

Timestamping with One Memo Field

You can implement timestamping with just one memo field. To do this, use the [HTML code before control](#) attribute to insert a text area control above the timestamp log field. This text area control is not tied to any database field. It exists only to allow input, which is copied into the timestamp log field when you save the issue. The advantage to this approach is that you avoid storing an extra memo field in the issue database. The disadvantage is that you cannot use HelpDesk Admin or the Web View Editor to customize the input text area (for example, to change the caption or position of the control).

Html code after control:

```
<script type='text/javascript'>
document.write(parent.objCustomCode.getCodeAfterField('%fieldname%', ''));
</script>
```

Html code before control:

```
<script type='text/javascript'>
document.write(parent.objCustomCode.getInputMemoField('mem_desc', '%fieldname%'));
</script>
```

New function in CustomCode.js:

```
function getInputMemoField( inputFld, logFld )
{
    var strOutput;

    strOutput="<textarea class='MemoFieldWidth' ";
    strOutput+="name='" + inputFld + "' ";
    strOutput+="wrap=physical rows=10 cols=73";
    strOutput+="onfocus=\"parent.MemoGotFocus('"
+ inputFld + "')\" ";
    strOutput+="onchange=\"parent.OnMemoRecordChanged('" + inputFld + "')\" ";
    strOutput+="onkeypress=\"parent.OnMemoRecordChanged('" + inputFld + "')\"></textarea><br>";

    strOutput+="<script type='text/javascript'>";

    strOutput+="document.write(parent.objCustomCode.getCodeAfterField('" + inputFld + "', '" + logFld
+ "')</script>";

    strOutput+="</script>";

    return strOutput;
}
```

New declaration in CustomCode.js:

```
// Declaration of the public functions
    this.getInputMemoField=getInputMemoField;
```

Related Topics

[Adding Timestamping](#)

[Customizing Timestamping](#)

[Inserting Custom HTML Code](#)

Changing the Format of Attachments

The **Detailed** choice in the **Include** list of the Notification Editor attaches a report to the notification message. This report includes most fields for an issue.

If you do not use Crystal Reports, attachments can be HTML files or text files. If you do use Crystal Reports, attachments are RTF files by default. You can change this to be PDF, text, or a number of other formats. See [Viewing Reports](#) for more information on using Crystal Reports for listing reports.

To change the format of a notification attachment:

- 1 Open the project definitions database.
- 2 In **tblMailContents**, change the **nFormatType** for the attachments. (Attachments have **nType** = 3 in **tblMailContents**).

nFormatType constants:

NoFormat	0	Excel40	20
CrystalReport	1	Excel50	21
DataInterchange	2	Excel50Tabular	22
RecordStyle	3	ODBC	23
RichText	4	HTML32Standard	24
Comma Separated Values	5	Explorer32Extend	25
TabSeparatedValues	6	NetScape20	26
CharSeparated Values	7	Excel70	27
Text	8	Excel70Tabular	28
TabSeparatedText	9	Excel80	29
PaginatedText	10	Excel80Tabular	30
Lotus123WKS	11	PortableDocFormat	31
Lotus123WK1	12	HTML40	32
Lotus123WK3	13	CrystalReport70	33
WordForWindows	14	ReportDefinition	34
Excel21	18	ExactRichText	35
Excel30	18	XML	36

Related Topics

[Attaching Information](#)

[Adding Custom Mail Contents](#)

[Example Macros](#)

[Adding New Notification Reports](#)

[Editing Databases](#)

Attaching Information

By default, the **Revision Record** and **Summary** are included in the body of the e-mail notification message. You can include this information as separate attachments.

To do this, open the project definitions database and in **tblMailContents** change the **nType** to 3. **nType** determines where the content is put in the e-mail message.

nType	Description
1	Subject
2	Body of e-mail message
3	Attachment

Related Topics

[Specifying Notification Contents](#)

[Changing the Format of Attachments](#)

[Adding Custom Mail Contents](#)

[Example Macros](#)

[Adding New Notification Reports](#)

[Editing Databases](#)

Adding Custom Mail Contents

In the Notification Editor, the **Include** list specifies what to include in an e-mail notification message. You can add items to this list. The items can be used as the message subject, inserted in the message body, or included as attachments to the message.

To add an item to the Include list of the Notification Editor:

- 1 Define a function in the macroXX.bas file.

This function should return the content you want to include in the e-mail message.

macroXX.bas is located in the project sub-folder of the HelpDeskServer folder (for example:

```
HelpDeskServer\helpdesk\macro70.bas)
```

- 2 Open the project definitions database, and in the tblMacros table, add a row for the new function.

tName is the name of the macro.

tFunctionName is the name of a function defined in macroXX.bas.

nType specifies what arguments the function takes:

- 1 = No Arguments
- 2 = Issue Record
- 3 = Revision history
- 4 = Expression

- 3 In the tblMailContents table, add a row for the macro, using the same **tName** as in **tblMacros**.

nType specifies where to include the contents:

- 1 = subject
- 2 = body
- 3 = attachment

nFormatType specifies the format:

- 4 = rtf
- 8 = text
- 14 = word
- 31 = pdf
- 32 = html40

When **nType** = 2, **nFormatType** must be 8 (text), otherwise the contents appears as a plain text e-mail message that contains RTF or PDF, which is never sent. This will hold up all your notifications.

Related Topics

[Specifying Notification Contents](#)

[Changing the Format of Attachments](#)

[Attaching Information](#)

[Example Macros](#)

[Adding New Notification Reports](#)

[Editing Databases](#)

Example Macros

Function to return a string:

```
Public Function GetCustomSubject(oCensusApplication, lngDtsRecordID, oExpression,
recRevisionHistory)
GetCustomSubject = "Your subject goes here."
End Function
```

Function to return the contents of a text file:

```
Public Function GetCustomMsgBody( oCensusApplication, lngDtsRecordID, oExpression,
recRevisionHistory )

Dim fsObj
Dim txtStreamObj
Dim emailbody
Dim strFileName

strFileName = "C:\Messages\msg.txt"

Set fsObj = CreateObject(
"Scripting.FileSystemObject")

Set txtStreamObj = fsObj.OpenTextFile(
strFileName, 1, False, False)

emailbody = txtStreamObj.ReadAll

txtStreamObj.Close
GetCustomMsgBody = emailbody
End Function
```

Function that takes the revision history as an argument and extracts a field value:

```
Public Function GetSubject(oCensusApplication, lngDtsRecordID, oExpression,
recRevisionHistory)

Dim lngLastRevisionNumber
Dim rstValue
Dim variablename

If oCensusApplication Is Nothing Then
Exit Function
End If

If recRevisionHistory Is Nothing Then
Exit Function
End If

'get the last revision number
GetRevisionNumberRange recRevisionHistory, 0, _
lngLastRevisionNumber

' Get the value for the field from the table
' of the last revision in the given set.

Set rstValue = oCensusApplication.CurrentProject._
DataStores.Item(32). _
GetConnection(1).Execute( _
"SELECT tBriefDescription FROM tblDts_History_
WHERE nID=" & lngDtsRecordID _
& " AND nRevisionNumber=" & _
& lngLastRevisionNumber, , 1)

' Build subject line that looks like:
'HELPDESK [Ticket 37]PROJECT [Issue 37] - Cannot print PDF file
If Not rstValue.EOF Then
If Not IsNull(rstValue.Fields(0).Value) Then
GetSubject = "HELPDESK [Ticket PROJECT [Issue " & _
lngDtsRecordID & "] - " & _
rstValue.Fields(0).Value
End If
```

```
End If  
End Function
```

In the **SELECT** statement, **tBriefDescription** is the internal name for the **Summary** field. You can find the internal field names in the **tName** column of the **tblDtsFields** table in the project definitions database.

Related Topics

[Changing the Format of Attachments](#)

[Attaching Information](#)

[Adding Custom Mail Contents](#)

[Adding Notification Reports](#)

Adding Notification Reports

Vector HelpDesk can use reports to format information included in e-mail notifications. For example, the Detailed and Summary items are formatted by reports. You can define new reports and add them to the list of items that can be included in an e-mail notification message.

To add a new report for notifications:

- 1 In HelpDesk Admin, use the Report Editor to define a new listing report.
- 2 Save and preview the report.
- 3 Exit HelpDesk Admin.
- 4 Open the project definitions database.
- 5 Open the **tblSystemCustomReports** table, find the record for the report you just created, and get the **nID** value.
- 6 Open the **tblMailContents** table and create a new record.

Field	Description
nID	Next available ID number for a record in the tblMailContents table.
tName	Name displayed in the Include list of the Notification Editor.
nType	2 = include in message body 3 = attachment
tFunction	The GenerateReport function takes care of generating the report for the notification message.
tArguments	<nID>.10, where <nID> is the ID of the report in tblSystemCustomReports .
nFormatType	4 = rtf 8 = text 14 = word 31 = pdf 32 = html40 See Changing the Format of Attachments for more format type values. When nType = 2, nFormatType must be 8 (text).

The report is now available in the **Include** list of the Notifications Editor.

If you're using Crystal Reports for your listing reports, you'll have to create a Crystal Report report file (.rpt) for the new notification report.

To create an .rpt file for your notification report:

- 1 View the report in a Web view.

This creates an .rpt file in the CensusWebVD\<<project>_<view>\Reports folder. For example:

```
\Program Files\Vector\HelpDeskServer\CensusWeb\Views\CensusWebVD\helpdesk_helpdesk\Reports
```

- 2 Copy the .rpt file to the HelpDeskServer\<<project>\Reports folder. For example:

```
\Program Files\Vector\HelpDeskServer\helpdesk\Reports
```

- 3 Rename the file by removing **portrait** (or **landscape**) from the .rpt file name.

Related Topics

[Defining Listing Reports](#)

[Specifying Notification Contents](#)

[Changing the Format of Attachments](#)

[Attaching Information](#)

[Adding Custom Mail Contents](#)

[Example Macros](#)

[Editing Databases](#)

Submit-only Views Without Persistent Cookies

Submit-only views use persistent cookies to store contact information, such as the user's name and e-mail address. You can set up submit-only views so that submitters do not have to enter their contact information. Consequently, the submit-only views use session cookies only.

To do this, you enter the contact information into Vector HelpDesk yourself, and then provide each user with their own specific URL.

To set up submit-only views that do not use persistent cookies:

- 1 Use HelpDesk Web Admin to create contacts if the submit-only view is intended to allow people without Vector HelpDesk user accounts to submit bugs directly. If the submit-only view is intended for people who have user accounts, the user information already exists in Vector HelpDesk.
- 2 Send a personal URL for the submit-only view to each person who needs to submit issues.

The personal URL for a contact looks something like this:

`http://server/helpdesk/logon.asp?`

`View=HelpDesk%2FReport%20Issue&CookieInfo13=14;Emilyhttp://server/census/logon.asp`

`?View=BugTrk%2FSubmit%20Issue&CookieInfo13=14;Emily`

The first part of the URL is the URL for the Vector HelpDesk logon page. The second part of the URL (in bold) is the query string. The `View=` part of the query string specifies the project and view:

`View=<project>%2F<view>`

where:

%2F is the escape sequence for a forward slash (/).

CookieInfo13= specifies the user's contact information:

`CookieInfo13=<User ID>;<Personal Name>`

<User ID> is the numeric ID assigned to the contact or user. You can find this value in the `tblUser` table of the Users database. **<Personal Name>** is the name of the contact or user.

Spaces in the project, view, and personal name must be replaced with the escape sequence `%20`.

Related Topics

[Pointing Users to Web Views](#)

About Branding Web Views

You can customize the look of a Web view by editing the CensusMain.css style sheet in CensusWeb\Views\CensusWebVD\Theme\css.

Put a copy of your customized style sheet in the CUSTOMIZEDFILES folder. For example, in #AllProjects#\Theme\css or #Project#helpdesk\Theme\css.

Related Topics

[View Toolbar](#)

[Summary List Toolbar](#)

[Summary List Header](#)

[Summary List](#)

[Tabs](#)

[Form](#)

[Field Captions](#)

[Form Elements](#)

[Command Bar](#)

[Branding the Logon Page](#)

[Branding Dialogs](#)

Replacing Logos

To replace the logo, edit the **td.Logo1** and **div.Logo** rules in CensusMain.css. The **background-image** property specifies the logo image.

Note that Vector HelpDesk uses two versions of the logo, **logol** for light backgrounds (Web view page) and **logo** for dark backgrounds (logon page).

```
/* logo on a Web view page */
td.Logo1
{
    background-image:url(../images/logos/logol.gif);
    background-repeat:no-repeat;
    display:block;
    left:27px;
    width:200px;
    height:60px;
    position:absolute;
}

/* logo on the Vector HelpDesk logon page */
div.Logo
{
    background-image:url(../images/logos/logo.gif);
    background-repeat:no-repeat;
    display:block;
    left:27px;
    width:200px;
    height:60px;
    position:absolute;
    border:3px solid orange;
}
}
```

Related Topics

[View Toolbar](#)

[Branding the Logon Page](#)

[Branding Web Views](#)

[Branding Dialogs](#)

View Toolbar

The View toolbar is the top part of a Web view, where the logo and the **Help**, **Log Off**, and other buttons are displayed.

body.TopToolbarBody sets the background color.

td.LogoI sets the logo image displayed in the toolbar.

Related Topics

[Branding Web Views](#)

[Summary List Toolbar](#)

[Summary List Header](#)

[Summary List](#)

[Tabs](#)

[Form](#)

[Field Captions](#)

[Form Elements](#)

[Command Bar](#)

[Branding the Logon Page](#)

[Branding Dialogs](#)

Summary List Toolbar

The toolbar has three parts: the top (with the Query, Sort, and Layout lists), the middle (the Ad-hoc Query Editor), and the bottom (used for bottom rounded corner images).

For the top part:

- **body.ToolbarBody** sets the background color.

This class is also used by many dialogs, such as **Attach File**, **History**, and **Options**.

- **ToolbarLeft**, **ToolbarCenter**, and **ToolbarRight** set the background images. **ToolbarCenter** also sets the font properties for the captions.

For the middle part:

- **body.ToolbarM** sets the background color.

- **ToolbarMLeft**, **ToolbarMCenter**, and **ToolbarMRight** set the background images. **ToolbarMCenter** also sets the font properties for the captions.

For the bottom part:

- **body.ToolbarB** sets the background color.

- **ToolbarBLeft**, **ToolbarBCenter**, and **ToolbarBRight** set the background images.

Related Topics

[Branding Web Views](#)

[View Toolbar](#)

[Summary List Header](#)

[Summary List](#)

[Tabs](#)

[Form](#)

[Field Captions](#)

[Form Elements](#)

[Command Bar](#)

[Branding the Logon Page](#)

[Branding Dialogs](#)

Summary List Header

The appearance of the heading row for the Summary List is controlled by:

- **headerSummaryList**
- **HeaderSummaryListCellCenter**
- **HeaderSummaryListCellLeft**
- **HeaderSummaryListCellRight**

headerSummaryList sets properties for the entire table. The three **HeaderListSummaryCell** classes are used to set background images. If you don't want to use images, you can comment out the **HeaderListSummaryCell** classes and use **headerSummaryList** to set the background and text colors.

Related Topics

[Branding Web Views](#)

[View Toolbar](#)

[Summary List Toolbar](#)

[Summary List](#)

[Tabs](#)

[Form](#)

[Field Captions](#)

[Form Elements](#)

[Command Bar](#)

[Branding the Logon Page](#)

[Branding Dialogs](#)

Summary List

body.SummaryListBody formats the page background and text.

The appearance of links in the Summary List are controlled by **body.SummaryListBody a:link** and **body.SummaryListBody a:visited**.

To change the shading of the rows in the list, edit these CSS classes. The two sets of CSS classes allow for rows with alternating shading.

- **SummaryList1**
- **SummaryList1Hover** (for Internet Explorer)
- **SummaryList1HoverN** (for Netscape)
- **SummaryList2**
- **SummaryList2Hover** (for Internet Explorer)
- **SummaryList2HoverN** (for Netscape)

Related Topics

[Branding Web Views](#)

[View Toolbar](#)

[Summary List Toolbar](#)

[Summary List Header](#)

[Tabs](#)

[Form](#)

[Field Captions](#)

[Form Elements](#)

[Command Bar](#)

[Branding the Logon Page](#)

[Branding Dialogs](#)

Tabs

The appearance of the selected tab is controlled by:

- **TabsLeftCornerUp**
- **TabsBackgroundUp**
- **TabsRightCornerUp**

The appearance of the unselected tabs is controlled by:

- **TabsLeftCornerDown**
- **TabsBackgroundDown**
- **TabsRightCornerDown**

For example, you could replace the background images or use solid colors instead of images.

To customize the font used for the text on the tabs, edit **TabsBackgroundDown** and **TabsBackgroundUp**.

The area to the right of tabs (where the next/previous page controls are located) can be styled with **tabsBody** (the background color) and **tabsBorder** (the bottom border), and **PageNavigation** (the *Page X of Y* text).

To put a dividing border between the Summary List and the tab area, use **border-top** with **tabsBody**.

Related Topics

[Branding Web Views](#)

[View Toolbar](#)

[Summary List Toolbar](#)

[Summary List Header](#)

[Summary List](#)

[Form](#)

[Field Captions](#)

[Form Elements](#)

[Command Bar](#)

[Branding the Logon Page](#)

[Branding Dialogs](#)

Form

Each tab in a Web view is a form that contains a table. The HTML looks like this:

```
<body class="RecordBody" >
  <form name="Record">
    <table class="RecordTab" >
```

So, for example, to change the background color of the tabs, edit the **body.RecordBody** class in `CensusMain.css`.

To apply styles to the form element, you can use this selector in the style sheet:

```
body.RecordBody form { ... }
```

Related Topics

[Branding Web Views](#)

[View Toolbar](#)

[Summary List Toolbar](#)

[Summary List Header](#)

[Summary List](#)

[Tabs](#)

[Form](#)

[Field Captions](#)

[Form Elements](#)

[Command Bar](#)

[Branding the Logon Page](#)

[Branding Dialogs](#)

Field Captions

Field captions in a Web view are formatted with the CSS classes **normalfield**, **requiredfield**, and **disabledfield**.

Related Topics

[Branding Web Views](#)

[View Toolbar](#)

[Summary List Toolbar](#)

[Summary List Header](#)

[Summary List](#)

[Tabs](#)

[Form](#)

[Form Elements](#)

[Command Bar](#)

[Branding the Logon Page](#)

[Branding Dialogs](#)

Form Elements

The CSS class applied to a form element is specified by the **CSS Class** field attribute in the Web View Editor. You can customize the default CSS classes or define your own and apply them to fields through the Attribute Editor.

The default CSS classes for form elements are **TextBoxWidth**, **ComboBoxWidth**, and **MemoFieldWidth**, **InputAttachment** (for the **Attachments** box), and **InputCalendar** (for date fields).

Related Topics

[Applying CSS Styles](#)

[Branding Web Views](#)

[View Toolbar](#)

[Summary List Toolbar](#)

[Summary List Header](#)

[Summary List](#)

[Tabs](#)

[Form](#)

[Field Captions](#)

[Command Bar](#)

[Branding the Logon Page](#)

[Branding Dialogs](#)

Command Bar

The command bar is the bar at the bottom of the page that contains the **Issue** box and the **New**, **Save**, **Cancel**, and **Print** buttons.

body.CommandBarBody sets the background color for the command bar. You can set the text color here (except for the text in the message area).

CommandBarBLeft, **CommandBarBCenter**, and **CommandBarBRight** specify the background images for the command bar.

CommandBarMsgLeft, **CommandBarMsgCenter**, and **CommandBarMsgRight** specify the background images for the message area (For example: *Ready. Click New to create a new issue.*) of the command bar.

ControlsCaptionDark sets the style for the **Current Issue** label.

CurrentRecord and **CurrentRecordHover** set the style for the **Current Issue** text box.

Related Topics

[Branding Web Views](#)

[View Toolbar](#)

[Summary List Toolbar](#)

[Summary List Header](#)

[Summary List](#)

[Tabs](#)

[Form](#)

[Field Captions](#)

[Form Elements](#)

[Command Bar](#)

[Branding the Logon Page](#)

[Branding Dialogs](#)

About Branding Dialogs

Dialogs are pages that users open by clicking a button. This includes the Attachments, Reports, Revision History, Password, Options, and Contacts dialogs.

Most of the dialogs use the same style sheet as the Web view. However, the Contacts and Password dialogs use the CensusMain.css style sheet found in CensusWebVD\Admin\THEME\css.

Related Topics

[Common Styles for All Dialogs](#)

[Attachments Dialog](#)

[Reports Dialog](#)

[Revision History Dialog](#)

[Options Dialog](#)

[Contacts Dialog](#)

[Password Dialog](#)

[Branding Web Views](#)

[Branding the Logon Page](#)

Common Styles for All Dialogs

body.toolbarBody sets the background color for the dialog pages (except for the Reports dialog, which uses **body.ReportsBody**).

The box with rounded corners is a set of background images specified by these classes:

- **BoxTLeft**, **BoxTCenter**, and **BoxTRight**
- **BoxMLeft**, **BoxMCenter**, and **BoxMRight**
- **BoxBLeft**, **BoxBCenter**, and **BoxBRight**

Related Topics

[Branding Dialogs](#)

[Attachments Dialog](#)

[Reports Dialog](#)

[Revision History Dialog](#)

[Options Dialog](#)

[Contacts Dialog](#)

[Password Dialog](#)

[Branding Web Views](#)

[Branding the Logon Page](#)

Attachments Dialog

body.toolbarBody sets the background color for the page.

DialogLabel formats the captions.

InputFile and **InputFileHover** format the text boxes.

The list of attached files is displayed in a table. **HeaderSummaryListCellCenter** formats the heading row (where the **File Name** and **Remove** captions are displayed).

SummaryList1 and **SummaryList2** format the list of files.

DialogLabel formats the file names.

Related Topics

[Branding Dialogs](#)

[Common Styles for All Dialogs](#)

[Reports Dialog](#)

[Revision History Dialog](#)

[Options Dialog](#)

[Contacts Dialog](#)

[Password Dialog](#)

[Branding Web Views](#)

[Branding the Logon Page](#)

Reports Dialog

body.ReportsBody sets the background color for the page.

The appearance of the tabs is controlled by the same CSS classes that apply to the tabs in a Web view (see [Tabs](#)).

The **Report Name** caption uses the **normalfield** class.

The **<select>** element that lists the available reports uses the **ReportList** class.

The **Layout:** and **Viewer Type:** captions use the **AdminNormalTextDarkBG** class. The corresponding **<select>** elements do not use a CSS class, but you can use their IDs (**LayoutType** and **ViewerType**) with ID selectors in the CSS file.

Related Topics

[Branding Dialogs](#)

[Common Styles for All Dialogs](#)

[Attachments Dialog](#)

[Revision History Dialog](#)

[Options Dialog](#)

[Contacts Dialog](#)

[Password Dialog](#)

[Branding Web Views](#)

[Branding the Logon Page](#)

Revision History Dialog

This dialog uses only the common styles.

Related Topics

[Branding Dialogs](#)

[Common Styles for All Dialogs](#)

[Attachments Dialog](#)

[Reports Dialog](#)

[Options Dialog](#)

[Contacts Dialog](#)

[Password Dialog](#)

[Branding Web Views](#)

[Branding the Logon Page](#)

Options Dialog

body.toolbarBody sets the background color for the page.

Captions use the **normalfield** class.

Form elements (such as <input>) are in a <TD> that uses the **normalfield** class, but the form elements themselves have no class.

Related Topics

[Branding Dialogs](#)

[Common Styles for All Dialogs](#)

[Attachments Dialog](#)

[Reports Dialog](#)

[Revision History Dialog](#)

[Contacts Dialog](#)

[Password Dialog](#)

[Branding Web Views](#)

[Branding the Logon Page](#)

Contacts Dialog

This dialog uses the CensusMain.css style sheet in CensusWebVD\Admin\THEME\css.

body.RecordBody sets the background color for the page.

The caption for the **Display** list uses the **DialogLabel** class, and the **<select>** element uses **AdminComboBoxWidth**.

On the input form for contact information, the captions use **requiredfield** and **DialogLabel**. The form elements all use **AdminComboBoxWidth**.

Related Topics

[Branding Dialogs](#)

[Common Styles for All Dialogs](#)

[Attachments Dialog](#)

[Reports Dialog](#)

[Revision History Dialog](#)

[Options Dialog](#)

[Password Dialog](#)

[Branding Web Views](#)

[Branding the Logon Page](#)

Password Dialog

This dialog uses the CensusMain.css style sheet in CensusWebVD\Admin\THEME\css.

body.toolbarBody sets the background color for the page.

normalfield formats the captions **Old Password**, **Password**, and **Confirm Password**.

AdminTextBoxWidth and **AdminTextBoxWidthHover** format the text boxes.

AdminNormalTextDarkBG formats the **Password can contain a maximum of 14 characters** message.

Related Topics

[Branding Dialogs](#)

[Common Styles for All Dialogs](#)

[Attachments Dialog](#)

[Reports Dialog](#)

[Revision History Dialog](#)

[Options Dialog](#)

[Contacts Dialog](#)

[Branding Web Views](#)

[Branding the Logon Page](#)

About Branding the Logon Page

The heights of some of the table cells are hard-coded in `CensusWebVD\logon.asp`.

LogonBody sets the background color for the page.

The images and background colors for the box with rounded corners are set by these classes:

- **Logon-t-left, td.Logon-t-center, div.Logon-t-right**
- **Logon-m-left, div.Logon-m-center, td.Logon-m-right**
- **Logon-b-left, td.Logon-b-center, div.Logon-b-right**

Note the mix of **div** and **td** elements. If you want to replace the images with colors and borders, set the left and right classes to the background color and use the center classes to define your border.

div.Logo inserts the Vector HelpDesk logo.

div.Logon-decor-img inserts the keyboard image with the orange border

LogonForm positions the logon form (the **Logon Name** and **Password** text boxes).

div.LogonField and **div.PwdField** position the form elements.

div.LogonCaption formats the **Logon Name** and **Password** labels.

input.LogonInput and **input.LogonInputHover** format the text boxes.

a.LogonState1 and **a.LogonState1:hover** set the images used for the **Logon** button.

HelpState1 and **HelpState1:hover** set the images used for the **Help** button.

Related Topics

[ValidateLogon Page](#)

[Branding Web Views](#)

[Branding Dialogs](#)

Validate Logon Page

The ValidateLogon page displays the available views. With a few exceptions (documented below), this page uses the same styles as the Logon page.

The heights of some of the table cells are hard-coded in **CensusWebVD\validatelogon.asp**.

ExitState1 and **ExitState1:hover** specify the images used for the **Log Off** button.

div.ViewList-m-center is used instead of **div.Logon-m-center**.

div.ViewList-decor-img is used instead of **div.Logon-decor-img** to display the keyboard image with the orange border

div.ViewLinks positions and sizes the area used to display the list of available views. This class also adds the vertical orange bar.

div.LogonCaption formats the **Click the view you want to open** string.

ViewListCaption formats the DIVs that contain the project names.

ViewList-Link, **ViewList-Link:link**, **ViewList-Link:visited**, and **ViewList-Link:hover** format the view names, which are hyperlinks.

Related Topics

[Branding the Logon Page](#)

[Branding Web Views](#)

[Branding Dialogs](#)

Adding Rows

By default, the timesheet project allows users to track weekly time spent for up to four different projects. If you need to track time for more than four different projects or tasks, you can add more rows to the timesheet.

Step 1: Create fields in the Field Editor

- 1 Create a new choice list for selecting projects. Copy the Project1 field and name it Project5.
- 2 Create the input fields for the days of the week.
 - a Copy the **P1HrsMon** field and name it **P5HrsMon**.
 - b Copy **P5HrsMon** and name it **P5HrsTue**.
 - c Copy **P5HrsTue** and name it **P5HrsWed**.
 - d Continue until you have input fields for all seven days of the week.
- 3 Create a field to hold the weekly total. Copy Proj1TotalWkHrs and name it **Proj5TotalWkHrs**.
- 4 Click **Apply** to add the fields to the project.

Step 2: Export the new fields to the view

- 1 In the Web View Editor, click the timesheet view in the **Project / View** list.
- 2 Under **Fields**, click the last field (**Product4**) in the **Export to View** list. Click **Attributes**, and delete the value of the Html code after control attribute.
- 3 Move the new fields from the **Available** list to the **Export to View** list.

The new fields are added to the end of the **Export to View** list. The order of the fields does not matter.
- 4 Click the last field in the **Export to View** list. Click **Attributes**, and set the value of the Html code after control attribute to "-->".

Step 3: Edit timesheet.js

- 1 Open timesheet.js in your favorite text editor. You can find this file in the folder:

```
CensusServer\CensusWeb\CUSTOMIZEDFILES\#Project#Timesheet\#AllWebViews#\Js
```

This is the file to edit if you want to add a row to all Web views of your timesheet project. If you want to add rows to only certain Web views, you'll need to create a new folder. For example:

```
CensusServer\CensusWeb\CUSTOMIZEDFILES
  \#Project#Timesheet\#WebViews#Timesheets_MyTimesheets\Js
```

- 2 At the top of the file, declare and initialize a variable that holds the ID of the new row:

```
var PROJ_FIVE_ID=4;
```

- 3 In the **WriteTimesheetGrid()** function, create a new array that holds the row information, and store this new array in **m_arrTimesheet**:

```
m_arrTimesheet[PROJ_FIVE_ID]=new Array(
  "cbo_97_cbo_97_Project5"
  + INNER_ARRAY_SPLITTER + INNER_ARRAY_SPLITTER+ strProjComboOptions,
  "nbr_98_nbr_98_P5HrsMon",
  "nbr_99_nbr_99_P5HrsTue",
  "nbr_100_nbr_100_P5HrsWed",
  "nbr_101_nbr_101_P5HrsThu",
  "nbr_102_nbr_102_P5HrsFri",
  "nbr_103_nbr_103_P5HrsSat",
  "nbr_104_nbr_104_P5HrsSun",
  "nbr_105_nbr_105_Proj5TotalWkHrs"
  + INNER_ARRAY_SPLITTER + CONTROL_TYPE_TOTAL);
```

- 4 Use the ID of the new row (PROJ_FIVE_ID) as an index into the **m_arrTimesheet** array.

In the new array, specify the names assigned to form controls in the generated HTML. These names are based on the **tBoundControlName**, which you can find in the **tblDtsFields** table of the project definitions database. For example, if the **tBoundControlName** is **cbo_97_Project5**, then the form control name is

cbo_97_cbo_97_Project5.

Add a call to **GetTimesheetProjRow()** for the new row. Put this call before the call to **GetTimesheetDayTotalRow()**.

```
// Calls to GetTimesheetProjRow() for previous rows  
  
strHTML+=m_oTimesheet.GetTimesheetProjRow(  
m_arrTimesheet[PROJ_FIVE_ID]  
);  
  
// call to GetTimesheetDayTotalRow()
```

Step 4: Update layouts, queries, sorts, and reports

Any layouts, queries, sorts, or reports that use values from the rows in a timesheet must be updated.

For example, the Current Issue - Detailed report is used to print the current timesheet. If you don't update this report, it won't show the rows you added.

Step 5: Regenerate the Web views

If you get javascript errors when you try to open the Web view, log off and fix timesheet.js. You don't need to regenerate the Web view, but you must copy timesheet.js from the CUSTOMIZEDFILES folder to the Web view folder.

Related Topics

[Changing the Timesheet Starting Day](#)

[Creating a Timesheet](#)

[Generating Web Views](#)

Changing the Timesheet Starting Day

The weekly timesheets can start on any day of the week. By default, the weekly timesheets start on Monday.

To change the timesheet starting day:

- 1 In the Web View Editor, click the timesheet view in the **Project / View** list.
- 2 Under **Fields**, click the last field before the fields that make up the actual timesheet. By default, this is the **Weekly Total Hours** field.
- 3 Click **Attributes** and then click the attribute value of the [Html code after control](#) attribute. This should take you to the end of the line of text, where you'll see the `START_MONDAY` constant as the last argument to a function.
- 4 Change this to the new starting day. Use one of these constants:

```
START_MONDAY  
START_TUESDAY  
START_WEDNESDAY  
START_THURSDAY  
START_FRIDAY  
START_SATURDAY  
START_SUNDAY
```

Related Topics

[Adding Rows](#)

[Creating a Timesheet](#)

Creating a Timesheet

When you create a new project based on the **Timesheet** project, you must add the timesheet to a Web view of the new project. After that, you can copy the Web view to create more views of the new project.

Project:	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	Sun	Project Total
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Daily Total:	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	

To add a timesheet to a Web view:

- 1 Export the fields displayed above the timesheet (by default: **Employee**, **Weekly Start Date**, and **Weekly Total Hours**).
- 2 Enter the following HTML into the **HTML code after control** attribute of the last field currently in the **Export to View** list.

Instead of typing in this HTML, you can copy the **HTML code after control** value from the **Weekly Total Hours** field in the original **Timesheet / Timesheet** Web view.

```
<script type="text/javascript" src="../js/Timesheet.js"></script>
<select name="TS_cbo_vals" class="HiddenObject"><WC@53></WC@53>
</select><script>WriteTimesheetGrid(escape
(document.Record.TS_cbo_vals.innerHTML),START_MONDAY);</script><!--
```

- 3 Export the timesheet fields. The order does not matter.
 - DailyTotalMon, ..., DailyTotalSun (7 fields)
 - P1HrsMon, ..., P1HrsSun (7 fields)
 - P2HrsMon, ..., P2HrsSun (7 fields)
 - P3HrsMon, ..., P3HrsSun (7 fields)
 - P4HrsMon, ..., P4HrsSun (7 fields)
 - Proj1TotalWkHrs, ..., Proj4TotalWkHrs (4 fields)
 - Project1, ..., Project4 (4 fields)
- 4 Enter the string "-->" (without the quotation marks) into the **HTML code after control** attribute of the last field in the **Export to View** list.

Related Topics

[Adding Rows](#)

[Changing the Timesheet Starting Day](#)

Chapter 18 - Databases

Overview

Vector HelpDesk Access Enabled supports Jet/Access databases; Vector HelpDesk SQL Enabled adds support for SQL Server.

By default, all Jet/Access databases are stored in the HelpDeskServer folder (for example, C:\Program Files\Vector\HelpDeskServer). SQL Server databases are located on the SQL Server computer in a folder specified by the administrator.

Project databases

A project includes two main databases:

- A database of issues (and their revision histories).
- A database of definitions, which contains the queries, sorts, layouts, reports, notifications, fields, and tabs available in the project.

Users database

In addition to the project databases, there is a database of users. The users database is shared by all projects.

Related Topics

[Issue Database](#)

[Project Definitions Database](#)

[Users Database](#)

[Other Project Files](#)

[Other Databases](#)

[Relocating Databases to SQL Server](#)

Issue Database

Microsoft Access

Issues are stored in the file **<project>01.dat**, where **<project>** is the name of the Vector HelpDesk project.

SQL Server

Issues are stored in the **<project>01_Dat** database, where **<project>** is the name of the Vector HelpDesk project. The database consists of:

- **<project>01_Dat.mdf**
The master data file (MDF) of the database.
- **<project>01_Dat_log.LDF**
Log file that holds the log information used to recover the database. There must be at least one log file for each database, although there can be more than one.

Tables

tblIDs

Stores most of the information entered for an issue. This includes most of the fields on the **Overview**, **Description**, and **Detail** tabs, as well as the information entered on any custom tabs added to the project.

tblFixInformation

In previous releases of Vector HelpDesk, new fields added to the **Resolution** tab were stored in **tblFixInformation**. The default fields are stored in **tblIDs**.

Any new fields added to the **Resolution** tab are stored in **tblIDs**. Stores fix-related information entered on the **Fix** tab.

tblAttachments

Stores any files attached to an issue.

tblRevisionHistory

Stores the revision history for issues.

Related Topics

[Database Overview](#)

[Project Definitions Database](#)

[Users Database](#)

[Other Project Files](#)

[Other Databases](#)

[Relocating Databases to SQL Server](#)

Project Definitions Database

Database

Microsoft Access

The project definitions database is named **<project>02.def**, where **<project>** is the name of the Vector HelpDesk project.

SQL Server

The project definitions database is named **<project>02_DEF**, and consists of these files:

- **<project>02_DEF.mdf**
- **<project>02_DEF_log.LDF**

Tables

tbIDtsFields

Defines the fields available in a Vector HelpDesk project. The Field Editor in HelpDesk Admin provides a user interface for editing most of the columns in this table.

In **tbIDtsFields**, the **tWhere** column specifies a **Where** clause that controls the contents of a choice list. The HelpDesk project uses the **Where** clause to build the **Contact**, **Owner**, and **Submitter** choice lists.

For example, this Where clause removes macros (such as <User>) and contacts from the **Owner** list:

```
Where (([nID] >= 0 And [tName] <> '') Or
[tName] = '<User>') And fOriginator = 0
```

- The **[nID] >= 0** condition removes the macros defined in **tblUser**:

User ID	User Name
-4	<Contact>
-3	<User>
-2	<Previous Owner>
-1	<Owner>

The user with **nID = 0** is the **<None>** macro.

- The **fOriginator = 0** condition removes contacts, so that the list contains users only.
- **tName** is the name of the user.

tblState

Specifies the list of choices for the **State** field. The **State** field is a read-only field that is set based on the **Progress** field.

tblSubState

Specifies the list of choices for the **Progress** field. Each possible substate corresponds to a possible **State** value (**Open** or **Closed**).

Choice List Tables

A choice table specifies the possible values for a choice list field. Each row in a choice table includes an **nID**, a **tName** (the choice text), and optionally, an **nChoiceID** (for non-alphabetical choice lists).

In the issue database, multi-choice fields store a semi-colon separated list of the **tName** values (the choice text strings), not the **nID** values.

Related Topics

[Database Overview](#)

[Issue Database](#)

[Users Database](#)

[Other Project Files](#)

[Other Databases](#)

[Relocating Databases to SQL Server](#)

Users Database

Database

All Vector HelpDesk projects share the same database of users. The users database also stores global choice lists.

Microsoft Access

The user database is named **users.mdb**.

SQL Server

The user database is named **USERS_MDB**, and consists of these files:

- USERS_MDB.mdf
- USERS_MDB_log.LDF

Tables

tblUser

Lists the users and contacts. Users have logon names and passwords. Contacts are people who report issues, but do not have a logon account.

If you add a field to the **Origin** tab, the field is added to **tblUser**, not **tblIDs**. The **Origin** tab is a read-only tab that displays user and contact information. The user and contact information is actually entered in HelpDesk Web Admin (**Security** tab). This allows user and contact information to be entered once for all issues, instead every time for each issue.

Related Topics

[Database Overview](#)

[Issue Database](#)

[Project Definitions Database](#)

[Other Project Files](#)

[Other Databases](#)

[Relocating Databases to SQL Server](#)

Other Project Files

<project>03.Usr is a Microsoft Access database. It contains a number of temporary tables used by HelpDesk Admin.

<project>.cen controls project initialization and versioning.

Related Topics

[Database Overview](#)

[Issue Database](#)

[Project Definitions Database](#)

[Users Database](#)

[Other Databases](#)

[Relocating Databases to SQL Server](#)

Other Databases

These databases are shared by all projects:

- **censusweb.mdb** (CENSUSWEB_MDB in SQL Server) stores Web view definitions. Used by the Web View Editor.
- **Licenses.mdb** (LICENSES_MDB in SQL Server) stores licensing information.

Related Topics

[Database Overview](#)

[Issue Database](#)

[Project Definitions Database](#)

[Users Database](#)

[Other Project Files](#)

[Relocating Databases to SQL Server](#)

Chapter 19 - Relocating HelpDesk Installation

About the Relocation Wizard

Vector HelpDesk includes a Relocation Wizard for moving its installations from one computer to another.

When you relocate Vector HelpDesk, the Relocation Wizard:

- Logs off all users.
- Unloads the virtual directories used by Vector HelpDesk.
- Stops the Mq Issue Agent service.
- Detaches local SQL Server databases.
- Backs up the HelpDeskServer and HelpDeskTools folders before relocating them.
- Copies Vector HelpDesk to another computer and disables the original installation.
- Regenerates all your Web views after Vector HelpDesk is relocated. The Web views are all regenerated in the default CensusWeb/Views/CensusWebVD folder.

The Relocation Wizard relocates SQL Server databases if:

- The SQL Server databases are local to the source computer.
- The version of SQL Server on the target computer is greater than or equal to the version of SQL Server on the source computer.

Related Topics

[Before You Relocate](#)

[Relocating Vector HelpDesk](#)

[If Something Goes Wrong](#)

[Updating Client Programs](#)

[Enabling Vector HelpDesk after Relocation](#)

Before You Relocate

Check Permissions

You must run the Relocation Wizard with a user account that has Full Control permission for the HelpDeskServer folders on all computers (current location and new location).

Close all copies of HelpDesk Admin and the Web View Editor

This includes all copies of the programs, not just those installed on the Web server.

Relocate Projects

If you have any projects located outside of the HelpDeskServer folder, use HelpDesk Admin to move the projects into the HelpDeskServer folder. After you relocate Vector HelpDesk, you can use HelpDesk Admin to move the projects back outside of the HelpDeskServer folder.

Back Up

The Relocation Wizard backs up your HelpDeskServer and HelpDeskTools folders, but you may want to create your own backups.

Log Off Users

The Relocation Wizard logs off users, but you may want to inform users that Vector HelpDesk will not be available.

Related Topics

[Relocating Vector HelpDesk](#)

[Updating Client Programs](#)

[Enabling Vector HelpDesk after Relocation](#)

Relocating Vector HelpDesk

In Vector HelpDesk, all components are typically installed on one computer: the Web server. The Relocation Wizard allows you to move Vector HelpDesk to a different computer.

To relocate Vector HelpDesk:

- 1 Close all copies of HelpDesk Admin, HelpDesk Web Admin, and the Web View Editor.
- 2 On the target computer, perform a clean install of Vector HelpDesk.
- 3 On the target computer, run the Relocation Wizard, called MqRelocateTool.exe, located in HelpDeskTools\Support\Relocation.
- 4 In the **Logon Name** and **Password** boxes, enter a Vector HelpDesk user account that belongs to a group with Admins permissions.
- 5 In the **Relocate From** section, enter the location of the current HelpDesk Server as a UNC path (for example, "\\NANP\HelpDeskServer").

Make sure the **Computer Name** box contains the name of the computer where the current HelpDesk Server is located, and the **Local Path** box contains the location of the current HelpDesk Server relative to a root directory (for example, "C:\Program Files\Vector\HelpDeskServer").

- 6 In **Relocate To** section, make sure the **HelpDesk Server** box contains the installation location of the HelpDesk Server on the target computer, and the **HelpDesk Tools** box contains the location of HelpDesk Admin and the Web View Editor on the new computer.
- 7 Select the **Show Advanced Options** check box to show the name of the target computer. If the name is incorrect or missing, enter the name.
- 8 Click **OK** to start the relocation.

When the relocation is complete, the Wizard regenerates all the Web views.

- 9 Update any remote installations of HelpDesk Admin and Web View Editor to reference the new HelpDeskServer share.

Check you can open the relocated projects and Web views, and you can run HelpDesk Admin, HelpDesk Web Admin, and the Web View Editor.

You can now uninstall the old copy of Vector HelpDesk.

Related Topics

[Before You Relocate](#)

[If Something Goes Wrong](#)

[Updating Client Programs](#)

If Something Goes Wrong

If something goes wrong when you relocate Vector HelpDesk:

- Check the error log. The Relocation Wizard creates an error log in the HelpDeskServer\Relocation folder of the computer where you run the wizard.
- The folder name includes the date and time, so the path to the error log looks something like this:

```
HelpDeskServer
  \Relocation_02-20-2003_10.44.50
    \RelocationErrorLog.txt
```

- Check there is enough free disk space on the new server. Typically, the amount of disk space required is at least twice the size of the current HelpDeskServer folder.
- If you are relocating SQL projects, reattach the databases to the SQL Server before trying again.

Updating Client Programs

After you relocate Vector HelpDesk, you must update any client programs. Client programs are copies of HelpDesk Admin and the Web View Editor installed on computers other than the Web server.

To update the client programs on a computer, you run the MqRelocateClients.exe program on that computer.

When the Relocation Wizard finishes, it puts a copy of the MqRelocateClients.exe program in the HelpDeskServer\Relocation_<timestamp> folder.

If you send the MqRelocateClients.exe program to users to run, you must also send the INI file located in the same folder as MqRelocateClients.exe.

Enabling Vector HelpDesk after Relocation

When the Relocation Wizard copies a Vector HelpDesk installation to a different computer, it automatically disables the original installation. However, you can re-enable the original installation if you want to continue using it, for example, when you to test an upgrade with live data, while continuing to use the original installation.

To enable Vector HelpDesk after a relocation:

Apply the following steps to the original Vector HelpDesk installation.

1 Reattach all SQL Server databases.

To prevent users from using old databases, the Relocation Wizard detaches all SQL Server databases.

Reattach the <project>_DAT databases and the USERS_MDB database using the .mdf or .ldf files in your HelpDeskServer folder.

2 Rename licenses.mdb.

Locate a file in the HelpDeskServer folder with a name that looks like Licenses.mdb_2004-06-18_20.23.21.bak. If there are several files like this, use the one with the most recent date in the name.

3 Allow users to log on.

- In the HelpDeskServer folder, open the file census.ini. Find the [SessionControl] section, and if **Enabled=0**, change it to **Enabled=1**.
- Start HelpDesk Admin and click **Tools > Integrity**. Select the **Remove Locks** check box and click **Start**.
- In the CensusWebVD folder (by default, HelpDeskServer\CensusWeb\Views\CensusWebVD), locate a file with a name like Logon.asp_bck_logoff. If this file exists, delete the Logon.asp file and rename Logon.asp_bck_logoff to Logon.asp.
- In the CensusWebAdmin folder (by default, HelpDeskServer\CensusWeb\Views\CensusWebAdmin), locate a file with a name like Logon.htm_bck_logoff. If this file exists, delete the Logon.htm file and rename Logon.htm_bck_logoff to Logon.htm.

4 Restart the notification service.

If you use notifications, open **Services** and start the **Mq Issue Agent** service.

To open **Services**, click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, double-click **Administrative Tools**, and then double-click **Services**.